SUMMARY STAGE 2018
GENERAL CODING INSTRUCTIONS
September 2019

Effective with cases diagnosed January 1, 2018 and forward

Prepared by
Data Quality, Analysis and Interpretation Branch
Surveillance Research Program
Division of Cancer Control and Population Sciences
National Cancer Institute
U.S. Department of Health and Human Services
Public Health Service
National Institutes of Health

Editors
Jennifer Ruhl, MSHCA, RHIT, CCS, CTR, NCI SEER
Carolyn Callaghan, CTR (SEER Seattle Registry)
Annette Hurlbut, RHIT, CTR (Contractor)
Lynn Ries, MS (Contractor)
Nicki Schussler, BS (IMS)

Suggested Citation: Ruhl JL, Callaghan C, Hurlbut, A, Ries LAG, Adamo P, Dickie L, Schussler N (eds.) Summary Stage 2018: Codes and Coding Instructions, National Cancer Institute, Bethesda, MD, 2018
NCI SEER
Peggy Adamo, BS, AAS, RHIT, CTR
Lois Dickie, CTR
Serban Negoita, MD, PhD, CTR

Others
Bethany Fotumale, BS, CTR (SEER Utah Registry)
Jennifer Hafterson, CTR (SEER Seattle Registry)
Denise Harrison, BS, CTR (Santa Barbara City College)
Stephanie M. Hill, MPH, CTR (SEER New Jersey Registry)
Loretta Huston, BS, CTR (SEER Utah Registry)
Tiffany Janes, CTR (SEER Seattle Registry)
Bobbi Jo Matt, BS, RHIT, CTR (SEER Iowa Registry)
Mary Mroszczyk, CTR (Massachusetts Registry)
Patrick Nicolin, BA, CTR (SEER Detroit Registry)
Lisa A. Pareti, BS, RHIT, CTR (SEER Louisiana Tumor Registry)
Cathryn Phillips, BA, CTR (SEER Connecticut Registry)
Mary Potts, RHIA, CPA, CTR (SEER Seattle Registry)
Elizabeth (Liz) Ramirez-Valdez, CTR (SEER New Mexico Registry)
Nancy Rold, CTR (Missouri Registry)
Debbi Romney, CTR (SEER Utah Registry)
Winny Roshala, BA CTR (SEER Greater California Registry)
Christina Schwarz, CTR (SEER Greater Bay Area Cancer Registry)
Kacey Wigren, RHIT, CTR (SEER Utah Registry)

Copyright information:
All material in this report may be reproduced or copied without permission; citation as to source, however, is appreciated.
We would also like to give a special thanks to the following individuals at Information Management Services, Inc. (IMS) who provide us with document support and web development.

Suzanne Adams, BS, CTR
Ginger Carter, BA
Michael Coffey, BS
Jean Cyr, BA
Bran Handley, BS
Charles May, BS
Publication History

The original 2-digit Historic Coding was prepared for the National Cancer Institute End Results Group by an Extent of Disease Advisory Group. While this code had been in use since the early 1950s, it was not printed as a formal document until 1967.

The 1977 Summary Staging Guide was prepared by the Demographic Analysis Section of the National Cancer Institute and was edited by Evelyn M. Shambaugh and Mildred A. Weiss. This manual has been reprinted numerous times in the ensuing years.

The Summary Staging Guide 2000 (SS2000) was a follow-on to the two previous staging versions, Summary Stage 1977 and historic stage. SS2000 updated medical terminology and newer concepts of stage. In order to document the SS2000 changes, footnotes designated terms that changed their stage designation and what they would have been in the two previous versions.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Table of Contents</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUMMARY STAGE</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUIDELINES BY STAGE</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CODE 0: IN SITU</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CODE 1: LOCALIZED</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGIONAL STAGE: CODES 2-4</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CODE 2: REGIONAL BY DIRECT EXTENSION ONLY</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CODE 3: REGIONAL LYMPH NODES ONLY</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CODE 4: REGIONAL BY BOTH DIRECT EXTENSION AND REGIONAL LYMPH NODE INVOLVED</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CODE 7: DISTANT</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CODE 8: BENIGN/BORDERLINE</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CODE 9: UNKNOWN IF EXTENSION OR METASTASIS</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS FOR USING THE SUMMARY STAGE 2018 MANUAL</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUIDELINES FOR SUMMARY STAGE</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOW TO ASSIGN SUMMARY STAGE</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFINITIONS OF TERMS USED IN THIS MANUAL</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMBIGUOUS TERMINOLOGY</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUMMARY STAGE 2018 CHAPTERS</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEAD AND NECK</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFINITION OF ANATOMIC SITES WITHIN THE HEAD AND NECK</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGIONAL LYMPH NODES FOR HEAD AND NECK PRIMARIES</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISTINGUISHING “IN SITU” AND “LOCALIZED” TUMORS FOR LIP, ORAL CAVITY, AND PHARYNX</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CERVICAL LYMPH NODES AND UNKNOWN PRIMARY TUMORS OF HEAD AND NECK</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIP</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TONGUE ANTERIOR</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUM</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOOR OF MOUTH</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PALATE HARD</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUCCAL MUCOSA</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOUTH OTHER</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAJOR SALIVARY GLANDS</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NASOPHARYNX</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OROPHARYNX</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HYPOPHARYNX</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHARYNX OTHER</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIDDLE EAR</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NASAL CAVITY AND PARanasAL SINUSES</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EYE OTHER 305
BRAIN 307
BRAIN 307
CNS OTHER 311
INTRACRANIAL GLAND 313
ENDOCRINE SYSTEM 315
THYROID 315
PARATHYROID 319
ADRENAL GLAND 322
ENDOCRINE OTHER 324
HEMATOLOGIC MALIGNANCIES 326
LYMPH NODES AND LYMPHATIC STRUCTURES ABOVE AND BELOW THE DIAPHRAGM 326
LYMPHOMA 327
MYCOSIS FUNGOIDES 330
PRIMARY CUTANEOUS LYMPHOMAS 332
MYELOMA AND PLASMA CELL DISORDERS 334
HEMERETIC 336
ILL-DEFINED OTHER 339
APPENDIX I: LYMPH NODE/LYMPH NODE CHAIN REFERENCE TABLE 341
APPENDIX II: SS2018 CHAPTERS SOLID TUMORS 350
APPENDIX III: SS2018 CHAPTERS HEMATOPOIETIC AND LYMPHOID NEOPLASMS 365
SUMMARY STAGE

Summary Stage is the most basic way of categorizing how far a cancer has spread from its point of origin. Historically, Summary Stage has also been called General Stage, California Stage, historic stage, and SEER Stage.

The 2018 version of Summary Stage applies to every site and/or histology combination, including lymphomas and leukemias.

Summary Stage uses all information available in the medical record; in other words, it is a combination of the most precise clinical and pathological documentation of the extent of disease. Many central registries report their data by Summary Stage as the staging categories are broad enough to measure the success of cancer control efforts and other epidemiologic efforts.

There are six main categories in Summary Stage, each of which is discussed in detail. In addition, the main category of Regional stage is subcategorized by the method of spread. The code structure is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>In situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Localized only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Regional by direct extension only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Regional by BOTH direct extension AND lymph node involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Distant site(s)/node(s) involved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Benign/borderline*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Unknown if extension or metastasis (unstaged, unknown, or unspecified) Death certificate only case</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Applicable for the following SS2018 chapters: Brain, CNS Other, Intracranial Gland

Note: For SS2018, code 5 for “Regional, NOS” can no longer be coded. Code 5 (Regional, NOS) is still applicable for SS2000.
GUIDELINES BY STAGE

Code 0: In situ

Note: ALWAYS check site-specific SS2018 chapters for exceptions and/or additional information

1. In situ means “in place”. The technical definition of in situ is the presence of malignant cells within the cell group from which they arose. There is no penetration of the basement membrane of the tissue and no stromal invasion. Generally, a cancer begins in the rapidly dividing cells of the epithelium or lining of an organ and grows from the inside to the outside of the organ. An in situ cancer fulfills all pathological criteria for malignancy except that it has not invaded the supporting structure of the organ or tissue in which it arose.
   Note: If the pathology report indicates an in situ tumor but there is evidence of positive lymph nodes or distant metastases, code to the regional nodes/distant metastases.

2. An in situ diagnosis can only be made microscopically, because a pathologist must identify the basement membrane and determine that it has not been penetrated. If the basement membrane has been disrupted (in other words, the pathologist describes the tumor as microinvasive, microinvasion), the case is no longer in situ and is at least localized (code 1).

3. Pathologists have many ways of describing in situ cancer
   • Intracystic
   • Intra-epithelial
   • No penetration below the basement membrane
   • No stromal invasion
   • Non-infiltrating
   • Noninvasive
   • Pre-invasive

4. Organs and tissues that have no epithelial layer cannot be staged as in situ, since they do not have a basement membrane.

5. Code 0 is not applicable for the following Summary Stage chapters
   • Bone
   • Brain
   • Cervical Lymph Nodes, Occult Head and Neck
   • CNS Other
   • Corpus Sarcoma
   • Heart, Mediastinum and Pleura
   • HemeRetic
   • Ill-defined other
   • Kaposi Sarcoma
   • Lymphoma
   • Lymphoma Ocular Adnexa
   • Mycosis Fungoides
   • Myeloma Plasma Cell Disorder
   • Pleural Mesothelioma
   • Primary Cutaneous Lymphoma (non-MF and SS)
   • Retinoblastoma
   • Retroperitoneum
   • Soft Tissue
Code 1: Localized

*Note: ALWAYS check site-specific SS2018 chapters for exceptions and/or additional information*

1. A localized cancer is defined as
   a. Malignancy limited to the site of origin
   b. Spread no farther than the site of origin in which it started
   c. Infiltration past the basement membrane of the epithelium into parenchyma (the functional part of the organ), but there is no spread beyond the boundaries of the organ

   *Note:* A tumor can be widely invasive or even show metastases within the organ itself and still be “confined to organ of origin” or localized in Summary Stage.

2. For organs that have definite boundaries (such as prostate, testis, or stomach) or sites where there is a clear line between the organ of origin and the surrounding region (such as breast or bladder), it is usually straightforward to determine if the cancer is localized.
   a. An exception is skin, because it is sometimes difficult to determine where the dermis ends and subcutaneous tissue begins.
   b. For many internal organs, it is difficult to determine whether the tumor is localized without surgery; however, with the increasing sophistication of imaging, it may be possible to determine whether a cancer is localized or regional without surgery.

3. It is important to know and recognize the names of different structures within the organ (such as lamina propria, myometrium, muscularis) so that a description of invasion or involvement of these structures will not be interpreted inappropriately, which may lead to over-staging.

4. Because Summary Stage uses both clinical and pathological information, it is important to review and read the pathology and operative report(s) for comments on gross evidence of spread, microscopic extension and metastases, as well as physical exam and diagnostic imaging reports for mention of regional or distant disease.
   a. If any of these reports provides evidence that the cancer has spread beyond the boundaries of the organ of origin, the case is not localized.
   b. If the pathology report, operative report and other investigations show no evidence of spread, the tumor may be assumed to be localized.

5. Code 1 is not applicable for the following Summary Stage chapters:
   - Cervical Lymph Nodes and Unknown Primary
   - Ill-defined other
Regional Stage: Codes 2-4

There are several codes to describe the different methods of regional spread of tumor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Regional by direct extension only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Regional lymph node(s) involved only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Clinicians may use some terms differently than cancer registrars. Therefore, it is important to understand the words used to describe the spread of the cancer and how they are used in staging. For example:

1. “Local” as in “carcinoma of the stomach with involvement of the local lymph nodes.” Local nodes are the first group of nodes to drain the primary site and often are referred to as “regional” nodes. Unless evidence of distant or regional spread is present, such a case should be staged as regional, lymph node(s) involved only, assign 3.

2. “Metastases” as in “carcinoma of lung with peribronchial lymph node metastases”. Metastases in this sense means involvement by tumor. The name of the involved lymph node will determine whether it is a regional node or distant node. In this case, it would be a regional node. It is important to learn the names of regional nodes for each primary site.
**Code 2: Regional by direct extension only**

*Note: ALWAYS check site-specific SS2018 chapters for exceptions and/or additional information*

1. Regional stage by direct extension is perhaps the broadest category as well as the most difficult to properly identify. The brief definition is direct tumor extension beyond the limits of the site of origin. Although the boundary between localized and regional tumor extension is usually well-identified, the boundary between regional and distant spread is not always clear and can be defined differently by physicians in various specialties.

2. Cancer becomes regional by direct extension when there is potential for spread by more than one vascular supply route. For example, if the tumor goes outside of the wall and invades another organ, it regional by direct extension.

3. The formal (scientific) definition of regional used by surgeons is that area extending from the periphery of an involved organ that lends itself to removal en bloc with a portion of, or an entire organ with outer limits to include at least the first level nodal basin. However, en bloc resection (removal of multiple organs or tissues in one piece at the same time) is not always feasible or may have been shown not to be necessary. For example, many clinical trials have shown that lumpectomy or modified radical mastectomy has equivalent survival to the very disfiguring radical mastectomy for treatment of breast cancer.

4. In contrast, radiation oncologists define the term regional as including any organs or tissues encompassed in the radiation field used to treat the primary site and regional lymph nodes.

5. For primary sites that have “walls” (e.g. colon, rectum), regional by direct extension is invasion through entire wall of organ into surrounding organs and/or adjacent tissues, direct extension or contiguous spread. For those primary sites without defined walls, regional by direct extension is when the tumor has spread beyond the primary site or capsule into adjacent structures.

6. Do NOT use code 2 if there is direct extension and also regional nodes positive (see code 4).

7. Code 2 is not applicable for the following Summary Stage chapters:
   - Cervical Lymph Nodes and Unknown Primary
   - HemeRetic
   - Ill-defined other
   - Myeloma Plasma Cell Disorder
**Code 3: Regional lymph nodes only**

*Note: ALWAYS check site-specific SS2018 chapters for exceptions and/or additional information*

1. Regional lymph nodes are listed for each chapter/site.
   a. If a lymph node chain is not listed in code 3, then the following resources can be used to help identify regional lymph nodes:
      i. Appendix I
      ii. Anatomy textbook
      iii. ICD-O manual
      iv. Medical dictionary (synonym)

2. If no preoperative treatment was administered and there is a discrepancy between clinical information and pathological information about the same lymph nodes, pathological information takes precedence. It is not necessary to biopsy every lymph node in the suspicious area to disprove involvement. Use the following priority order:
   a. Pathology report
   b. Imaging
      i. If nodes are determined positive based on imaging and then confirmed to be negative on pathological exam, treat the regional nodes as negative when assigning Summary Stage
   c. Physical exam
      i. If nodes are determined positive based on physical exam and then confirmed to be negative on pathological exam, treat the regional nodes as negative when assigning Summary Stage

3. If the patient receives neoadjuvant (preoperative) systemic therapy (chemotherapy, immunotherapy) or radiation therapy, code the clinical information if that is the most extensive lymph node involvement documented. If the post-neoadjuvant surgery shows more extensive lymph node involvement, code the regional nodes based on the post-neoadjuvant information.

4. For solid tumors, the terms “fixed” or “matted” and “mass in the hilum, mediastinum, retroperitoneum, and/or mesentery” (with no specific information as to tissue involved) are recorded as involvement of lymph nodes.
   a. Other terms, such as “palpable,” “enlarged,” “visible swelling,” “shotty,” or “lymphadenopathy” should be ignored for solid tumors. If these terms are used and there is no treatment to indicate lymph node involvement, treat the case as having no lymph node involvement.

5. The terms “homolateral,” “ipsilateral,” and “same side” are used interchangeably.
6. **Accessible lymph nodes:** For “accessible” lymph nodes that can be observed, palpated, or examined without instruments, such as the regional nodes for the breast, oral cavity, salivary gland, skin, thyroid, and other organs, look for some description of the regional lymph nodes. A statement such as “remainder of examination negative” is sufficient to determine negative regional lymph nodes.

7. **Inaccessible lymph nodes:** For certain primary sites, regional lymph nodes are not easily examined by palpation, observation, physical examination, or other clinical methods. These are lymph nodes within body cavities that in most situations cannot be palpated, making them inaccessible. Bladder, colon, corpus uteri, esophagus, kidney, liver, lung, ovary, prostate, and stomach are examples of inaccessible sites (this is not an all-inclusive list). When the tumor is Localized and standard treatment for a localized site is done, it is sufficient to determine negative regional lymph nodes.

8. Involved nodes found during sentinel lymph node procedures are classified as positive regional nodes.
   a. The sentinel lymph node is the first lymph node to receive lymphatic drainage from a primary tumor.
   b. If it contains metastatic tumor, this indicates that other lymph nodes may contain tumor. If it does not contain metastatic tumor, other lymph nodes are not likely to contain tumor. Occasionally there is more than one sentinel lymph node.

9. For some chapters, ITCs are counted as positive regional nodes, while other chapters count them as negative. See the individual chapters to determine how to count ITCs.

10. Discontinuous (satellite) tumor deposits (peritumoral nodules) for colon, appendix, rectosigmoid and rectum can occur WITH or WITHOUT regional lymph node involvement. Assign the appropriate code according to guidelines in individual chapters. Tumor nodules in pericolic or perirectal fat without evidence of residual lymph node structures can be one of several aspects of the primary cancer: discontinuous spread, venous invasion with extravascular spread, or a totally replaced lymph node. If there are Tumor Deposits AND node involvement, code only the information on node involvement in Summary Stage.

11. If direct extension of the primary tumor into a regional lymph node is shown, code as involved regional nodes.

12. Any positive unidentified nodes included with the resected primary site specimen are to be coded as “Regional Lymph Nodes, NOS”.

13. If the only indication of positive regional lymph node involvement in the record is the physician’s statement of a positive N category from the TNM staging system or a stage from a site-specific staging system, use that information to code regional lymph node involvement.

14. If a specific chain of lymph nodes is named, but not listed as regional, first determine if the name is synonymous with a listed lymph node. Otherwise, assume distant lymph node(s) are involved.
15. Code 3 is not applicable for the following Summary Stage chapters:
   - Brain
   - CNS Other
   - HemeRetic
   - Ill-defined other (includes unknown primary site, C809)
   - Intracranial Gland
   - Lymphoma
     - Primary Cutaneous Lymphoma and Ocular Adnexal Lymphoma have separate chapters from Lymphoma and regional lymph node involvement is assigned in these chapters.

16. Do NOT use code 3 if there are regional nodes positive AND also direct extension (see code 4).
**Code 4: Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved**

*Note: ALWAYS check site-specific SS2018 chapters for exceptions and/or additional information*

1. For tumors that are regional (see definition of code 2) and have regional lymph node involvement (see definition of code 3), use code 4.

2. If there is only localized involvement (see definition of code 1) with regional lymph node involvement, assign code 3.

3. Code 4 is not applicable for the following Summary Stage chapters:
   - Brain
   - Cervical Lymph Nodes and Unknown Primary
   - CNS Other
   - HemeRetic
   - Ill-defined other (includes unknown primary site)
   - Intracranial Gland
   - Lymphoma
     - Primary Cutaneous Lymphoma and Ocular Adnexal Lymphoma have separate chapters from Lymphoma and regional lymph node involvement is assigned in these chapters.
   - Myeloma Plasma Cell Disorder
**Code 7: Distant**

*Note: ALWAYS check site-specific SS2018 chapters for exceptions and/or additional information*

1. Distant metastases are tumor cells that have broken away from the primary tumor, have travelled to other parts of the body, and have begun to grow at the new location. Distant stage is also called remote, diffuse, disseminated, metastatic, or secondary disease. The point is that in most cases there is no visible continuous trail of tumor cells involving only the primary site and the distant site.

2. Cancer cells can travel from the primary site in any of four ways.
   a. Extension from primary organ beyond adjacent tissue into next organ; for example, from the lung through the pleura into bone or nerve
   b. Travel in lymph channels beyond the first (regional) drainage area. Tumor cells can be filtered, trapped and begin to grow in any lymph nodes in the body
   c. Hematogenous or blood-borne metastases. Invasion of blood vessels within the primary tumor (veins are more susceptible to invasion than thicker-walled arteries) allows escape of tumor cells or tumor emboli which are transported through the blood stream to another part of the body where it lodges in a capillary or arteriole. At that point, the tumor penetrates the vessel wall and grows back into the surrounding tissue.
   d. Spread through fluids in a body cavity.
      i. Example: malignant cells rupture the surface of the primary tumor and are released into the thoracic or peritoneal cavity. They float in the fluid and can land and grow on any tissue reached by the fluid.
      ii. This type of spread is also called implantation or seeding metastases. Some tumors form large quantities of fluid called ascites that can be removed, but the fluid rapidly re-accumulates. However, the presence of fluid or ascites does not automatically indicate dissemination. There must be cytologic evidence of malignant cells. A subsequent clinical diagnosis should be able to override a negative cytology. Malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings may not be distant involvement in some schemas.

3. Common sites of distant spread are liver, lung, brain, and bones, but they are not listed specifically for each chapter. These organs receive blood flow from all parts of body and thus are a target for distant metastases. However, if the primary site is adjacent to the liver, lung, brain or bone, it is important to review the Summary Stage chapter for the primary site to assure that the stage is not regional by direct extension.
   a. Example: Liver involvement from a primary in the gallbladder. It is likely that this is regional by direct extension rather than distant stage, since the gallbladder is adjacent to the liver.

4. Read the diagnostic imaging reports to determine whether the cancer involves the surface of the secondary organ, which could either be regional by direct (contiguous) extension or distant (if determined to be a discontinuous surface implant). If the tumor is identified growing from one organ onto/through the surface of the secondary organ, then it is contiguous extension. But if the tumor is only found in the parenchyma of the secondary organ well away from the primary organ, then it is discontinuous mets.

5. Hematopoietic, immunoproliferative, and myeloproliferative neoplasms are distant except as noted in the Summary Stage chapter.

6. Code 7 is not applicable for the following Summary Stage chapters:
   - Ill-defined other
Code 8: Benign/Borderline

1. Code 8 is for Benign/borderline neoplasms. Benign/borderline neoplasms are collected ONLY for the following chapters:
   - Brain
   - CNS Other
   - Intracranial Gland

2. If a registry collects other benign/borderline tumors that are not reportable, use code 9 for Summary Stage 2018. Code 8, at this time, will not be allowed for other sites.
Code 9: Unknown if extension or metastasis (unstaged, unknown or unspecified)

*Note: ALWAYS check site-specific SS2018 chapters for exceptions and/or additional information*

1. If the primary site is unknown (C809), then Summary Stage must be unknown.

2. Assign 9 very sparingly. If possible, contact the physician to see if there is more information about the case which is not in the record, such as diagnostic studies performed prior to admission or documentation in the physician’s office record.

3. There will be cases for which sufficient evidence is not available to adequately assign a stage. Examples include:
   a. The patient expires before workup is completed
   b. A patient refuses a diagnostic or treatment procedure
   c. There is limited workup due to the patient’s age or a simultaneous comorbid or contraindicating condition
   d. Only a biopsy is done and does not provide enough information to assign stage

4. Code 9 is to be used by default for Death Certificate Only (DCO) cases; however, assign the appropriate Summary Stage when specific staging information is available on a DCO.
GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS FOR USING THE SUMMARY STAGE 2018 MANUAL

The 2018 Summary Stage Manual chapters consist of a one-digit hierarchical code. In the United States, these chapters will apply to January 1, 2018 diagnoses and forward. It is extremely important to thoroughly read all clinical and pathological documentation, including imaging studies, operative and pathology reports, and the clinician’s narrative descriptions of tumor involvement.

1. Updates to the Summary Stage 2018 manual were based on the AJCC 8th edition. Although the two systems are similar, there are many differences between them. For example, something that is regional in AJCC (recorded in T or N) may be distant in Summary Stage. If a structure or lymph node cannot be found in localized (code 1) or regional (codes 2-4), then review distant (code 7).

2. Summary Stage chapters apply to ALL primary sites and histologies. Most chapters are based on primary site, while some are based on histology alone, or both primary site and histology.

3. Chapter-specific guidelines take precedence over general guidelines. Always read the information pertaining to a specific primary site or histology chapter.

4. For ALL primary sites and histologies, Summary Stage is based on a combined clinical and operative/pathological assessment. Gross observations at surgery are particularly important when all malignant tissue cannot be, or was not, removed.
   a. In the event of a discrepancy between pathology and operative reports concerning excised tissue, priority is given to the pathology report.

5. Summary Stage should include all information available within four months of diagnosis in the absence of disease progression or upon completion of surgery(ies) in first course of treatment, whichever is longer.

6. Clinical information, such as description of skin involvement for breast cancer and distant lymph nodes for any site, can change the Summary Stage. Be sure to review the clinical information carefully to accurately determine the extent of disease.
   a. If the operative/pathology information disproves the clinical information, use the operative/pathology information.

7. When multiple tumors are reported as a single primary, assign the greatest Summary Stage from any tumor.

8. Information for Summary Stage from a surgical resection after neoadjuvant treatment may be used, but ONLY if the extent of disease is greater than the pre-treatment clinical findings.

9. Disease progression, including metastatic involvement, known to have developed after the initial stage workup, should be excluded when assigning Summary Stage.

10. Autopsy reports are used in Summary Stage just as are pathology reports, applying the same rules for inclusion and exclusion.
11. T, N, M information may be used to assign Summary Stage when it is the only information available.

12. Use the medical record documentation to assign Summary Stage when there is a discrepancy between the T, N, M information and the documentation in the medical record. If you have access to the physician, please query to resolve the discrepancy.
   a. When there is doubt that documentation in the medical record is complete, assign Summary Stage corresponding to the physician staging

13. It is strongly recommended that the assessment of the Summary Stage be documented, as well as the choice of the Summary Stage assignment in a related STAGE text field on the abstract.

14. Death Certificate Only (DCO) cases and unknown primaries are assigned ‘9’ for Summary Stage; however, assign the appropriate Summary Stage when specific staging information is available on a DCO.
GUIDELINES FOR SUMMARY STAGE

For efficient assignment of Summary Stage, here are some additional guidelines. Three of the Summary Stage categories can be ruled out quickly: in situ, distant, and localized.

*Note 1:* These guidelines do not apply to benign/borderline tumors.

*Note 2:* ALWAYS check site-specific SS2018 chapters for exceptions and/or additional information

**In situ**
1. Rule out in situ stage disease. Carcinomas and melanomas are the only types of cancer that can be classified as in situ, since they arise only in organs with a basement membrane. Sarcomas are never described as in situ. A pathologist must examine the primary tissue and state that the tumor is in situ. If the cancer is anything except a carcinoma or melanoma, it cannot be in situ.
2. If there is any evidence of invasion (or extension beyond the basement membrane), nodal involvement or metastatic spread, the case is not in situ even if the pathology report so states.

**Distant**
3. Rule out distant disease. If distant metastases can be documented, there is no need to spend a great deal of time identifying local or regional spread. If distant metastases are recorded on imaging or needle biopsy, the stage is already determined and the patient does not need to undergo a lot of other tests.
4. Hematopoietic diseases, such as leukemia and multiple myeloma, are disseminated or distant at time of diagnosis.
5. Determine distant spread by reading the operative report for comments about seeding, implants, liver nodules, or other indications of metastases to determine if they are indicators of distant disease for a particular chapter. Read diagnostic reports for references to distant disease.
6. If nodes, organs, or adjacent tissues are not specifically mentioned for the primary site of the cancer in the description of the various staging categories, approximate the location and assign Summary Stage based on the stage listed for organs or tissues in the same anatomic area. If there is no match, assume the involved organ/tissues, nodes in question represents distant disease.

**Localized if not in Situ or Distant above**
7. Rule out that the cancer is “confined to the organ of origin.” In order for a lesion to be classified as localized, it must not extend beyond the outer limits of the organ, and there must be no evidence of metastases anywhere else.
8. Terms such as “blood vessel invasion” or “perineural lymphatic invasion” do not necessarily indicate that the cancer has spread beyond the primary organ – see specific chapter. If tumor at the primary site has invaded lymph or blood vessels, there is the potential for malignant cells to be transported throughout the body. Minor vessel or lymph-vascular invasion within the primary site is not a determining factor in changing Summary Stage unless there is definite evidence of tumor at distant sites.
**Regional**

9. If in situ, distant, and localized categories have been ruled out, the stage is regional.

10. For tissues, structures, and lymph nodes, assume ipsilateral unless stated to be contralateral or bilateral.

11. For solid tumors, if there are lymph nodes involved with the tumor, the stage is at least regional.

12. Determine whether it is regional by direct extension, regional nodes, or both.

**Unknown if Extension or Metastasis**

13. If there is not enough information in the record to categorize a case, and contacting the physician is not possible or has not resulted in additional information, the case must be recorded as unknown.
HOW TO ASSIGN SUMMARY STAGE

Answers to four basic questions will determine the correct Summary Stage.

1. **Where did the cancer start?**
   a. In what organ or tissue did the tumor originate?
   b. Is there a specific subsite of the organ involved?
   c. Information about the primary site and histology will usually come from the physical examination, a diagnostic imaging report, the operative report or the pathology report.
   d. Code the primary site and histology according to the rules in the *International Classification of Diseases for Oncology, Third Edition; 2018 Solid Tumor Rules; and the Hematopoietic Manual and Database.*
   e. In addition to recording this code in the primary site and histology fields on the cancer abstract, this code will be useful later in the staging process.

2. **Where did the cancer go?**
   a. Once the primary site is known, determine what other organs or structures are involved.
   b. Review the physical examination, diagnostic imaging reports, operative report(s), pathology report(s), and laboratory tests to identify any structures that are involved by cancer cells.
   c. Any of these reports can provide a piece of information that might change the stage.
   d. Note whether there is lymphatic or vascular invasion and/or spread, which organs are involved, and whether there is a single focus or multiple foci of tumor.
   e. It is important to know the names of the substructures within the primary site as well as the names of surrounding organs and structures. Note the names of any tissues that are reported to be involved by cancer cells.

3. **How did the cancer spread to the other organ or structure?**
   a. Did the cancer spread to the new organ/tissue in a continuous line of tumor cells from the primary site?
   b. If the pathologist can identify a trail of tumor cells from one organ to another, the stage may be regional by direct extension or distant by direct extension.
   c. Did the cancer spread by breaking away from the primary cancer and floating to the new site in the bloodstream or body fluids (includes lymph within lymph vessels, blood within blood vessels, fluid outside of vessels such as pleural, pericardial, peritoneal)?
   d. If there is no direct trail of tumor cells from the primary organ to another site, the stage is probably distant.

4. **What are the stage and correct code for this cancer?**
   a. In the Summary Staging Manual 2018, go to the appropriate chapter that includes the ICD-O primary site and/or histology code identified earlier.
   b. Review the chapter looking for the names of the structures and organs that were reported as involved. If more than one structure or organ is involved, select the highest category that includes an involved structure.
DEFINITIONS OF TERMS USED IN THIS MANUAL

Adjacent connective tissue
These are unnamed tissues that immediately surround an organ or structure containing a primary cancer. Use this category when a tumor has invaded past the outer border (capsule, serosa, or other edge) of the primary organ into the organ’s surrounding supportive structures but has not invaded into larger structures or adjacent organs. The structures considered in ICD-O as connective tissue include the following: adipose tissue; aponeuroses; arteries; blood vessels; bursa; connective tissue, NOS; fascia; fatty tissue; fibrous tissue; ganglia; ligaments; lymphatic channels (not nodes); muscle; nerves (spinal, sympathetic and peripheral); skeletal muscle; subcutaneous tissue; synovia; tendons; tendon sheaths; veins, and vessels, NOS. In general, these tissues do not have specific names. These tissues form the framework of many organs, provide support to hold organs in place, bind tissues and organs together, and serve as storage sites for nutrients.

Adjacent organs/structures
Organs are anatomic structures with specific physiologic functions other than (or in addition to) support and storage. There are two types:

- Unnamed: Contiguous growth into an unnamed organ lying next to the primary is coded to ‘adjacent organs/structures.’
- Named: Connective tissues may be large enough to be given a specific name.
  - Examples: Blood, cartilage and bone are sometimes considered connective tissues, but in this manual, they would be listed separately.
  - Contiguous growth from one organ into an adjacent named structure would be coded to ‘adjacent organs/structures.’ For example, the brachial artery has a name, as does the broad ligament and both are structures.

Circulating Tumor Cells (CTCs)
See Isolated Tumor Cells

Contiguous
Directly adjacent; continuously adjoining; without lapse or intervening space; used in reference to regionalized cancers and extent of disease.

Cortex (adjective: cortical)
The external or outer surface layer of an organ, as distinguished from the core, or medulla, of the organ. In some organs, such as the adrenal glands, the cortex has a different function than the medulla.

Discontinuous
Tumors that are not connected; tumors in more than one area with normal tissue between them; often a sign of metastatic disease.

Disseminated Tumor Cells (DTCs)
See Isolated Tumor Cells
**Direct extension**
A term used in staging to indicate contiguous growth of tumor from the primary into an adjacent organ or surrounding tissue.

**Distant**
Refers to cancer that has spread from the original (primary) tumor to distant organs or distant lymph nodes.

**Isolated tumor cells (ITCs), Circulating tumor cells (CTCs), Disseminated tumor cells (DTCs)**
Isolated tumor cells (ITCs) are single tumor cells or small clusters of cells not more than 0.2 mm in greatest extent that can be detected by routine H and E stains or immunohistochemistry. An additional criterion has been proposed to include a cluster of fewer than 200 cells in a single histological cross-section. The same applies to cases with findings suggestive of tumor cells or their components by non-morphological techniques such as flow cytometry or DNA analysis.

ITCs do not typically show evidence of metastatic activity (e.g. proliferation or stromal reaction) or penetration of lymphatic sinus walls.

This definition also refers to circulating tumor cells (CTCs) and disseminated tumor cells (DTCs)

**Localized**
In medicine, describes disease that is limited to a certain part of the body. For example, localized cancer is usually found only in the tissue or organ where it began, and has not spread to nearby lymph nodes or to other parts of the body. Some localized cancers can be completely removed by surgery.

**Medulla** (adjective: medullary)
The medulla (central) portion of an organ, in contrast to the outer layer or cortex. It is sometimes called marrow. In some organs, such as bone, the medulla or marrow has a different physiologic role than the cortex.

**Parenchyma**
The parenchyma is the functional portion of an organ, in contrast to its framework or stroma. For example, the parenchyma of the kidney contains all the structures which filter and remove waste products from the blood. In general, malignancies tend to arise in the parenchyma of an organ.

**Regional**
In oncology, describes the body area right around a tumor.

**Stroma**
The stroma are the cells and tissues that support, store nutrients, and maintain viability within an organ. Stroma consists of connective tissue, vessels and nerves, and provides the framework of an organ. In general, spread of tumor to the stroma of an organ is still localized or confined to the organ of origin.
**AMBIGUOUS TERMINOLOGY**

Most of the time, registrars will find definitive statements of involvement; however, for those situations where involvement is described with non-definitive (ambiguous) terminology, use the guidelines below to interpret and determine the appropriate assignment of Summary Stage 2018.

Determination of the cancer stage is both a subjective and objective assessment by the physician(s) of how far the cancer has spread. When it is not possible to determine the extent of involvement because terminology is ambiguous, look at the documentation that the physician used to make informed decisions on how the patient is being treated. For example, assign Summary Stage 2018 based on involvement when the patient was treated as though adjacent organs or nodes were involved.

Use the following lists to interpret the intent of the clinician ONLY when further documentation is not available and/or there is no specific statement of involvement in the medical record. The physician’s definitions/descriptions and choice of therapy have priority over these lists because individual clinicians may use these terms differently.

**Note 1:** Terminology in the chapter takes priority over this list. Some chapters interpret certain words as involvement; such as ‘encasing’ the carotid artery for a head and neck site or “abutment,” “encases,” or “encasement” for pancreas primaries.

**Note 2:** Use this list only for Summary Stage 2018 or EOD 2018.

**Note 3:** This is **not** the same list used for determining reportability as published in the SEER manual, Hematopoietic Manual or in Section 1 of the Standards for Oncology Registry Entry (STORE). This is **not** the same list of ambiguous terminology provided in the Solid Tumors Rules published and maintained by the SEER Program.
Use the following lists as a guide *when no other information is available.*

### Involved

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adherent</th>
<th>Incipient invasion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Apparent(ly)</td>
<td>Induration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appears to</td>
<td>Infringe/infringing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparable with</td>
<td>Into*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compatible with</td>
<td>Intrude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consistent with</td>
<td>Most likely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contiguous/continuous with</td>
<td>Onto*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encroaching upon*</td>
<td>Overstep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extension to, into, onto, out onto</td>
<td>Presumed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Features of</td>
<td>Probable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixation to a structure other than primary**</td>
<td>Protruding into (unless encapsulated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed to another structure**</td>
<td>Suspected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impending perforation of</td>
<td>Suspicious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impinging upon</td>
<td>To*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impose/imposing on</td>
<td>Up to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Not Involved

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abuts</th>
<th>Extension to without invasion/involvement of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approaching</td>
<td>Kiss/kissing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approximates</td>
<td>Matted (except for lymph nodes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attached</td>
<td>Possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannot be excluded/ruled out</td>
<td>Questionable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Efface/effacing/effacement</td>
<td>Reaching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encased/encasing</td>
<td>Rule out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encompass(ed)</td>
<td>Suggests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entrapped</td>
<td>Very close to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equivocal</td>
<td>Worrisome</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* interpret as involvement whether the description is clinical or operative/pathological  
** interpret as involvement of other organ or tissue
SUMMARY STAGE 2018 CHAPTERS

The Summary Stage site-specific chapters are based on historical staging, Summary Stage 2000 and the AJCC 8th Edition. Some of the AJCC 8th edition chapters were divided to line up with historical Summary Stage chapters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SS Chapter</th>
<th>EOD Schema</th>
<th>AJCC Chap. No</th>
<th>AJCC Chapter Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adnexa Uterine Other</td>
<td>Adnexa Uterine Other</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrenal Gland (including NET)</td>
<td>Adrenal Gland</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>Adrenal Cortical Carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrenal Gland (including NET)</td>
<td>NET Adrenal Gland</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>Adrenal-Neuroendocrine Tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ampulla Vater (including NET)</td>
<td>Ampulla Vater</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>Ampulla of Vater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ampulla Vater (including NET)</td>
<td>NET Ampulla of Vater</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Neuroendocrine Tumors of the Duodenum and Ampulla of Vater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anus</td>
<td>Anus</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Anus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix (including NET)</td>
<td>Appendix</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Appendix-Carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix (including NET)</td>
<td>NET Appendix</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Neuroendocrine Tumors of the Appendix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biliary Other</td>
<td>Biliary Other</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder</td>
<td>Bladder</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>Urinary Bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bone</td>
<td>Bone Appendicular Skeleton</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>Bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bone</td>
<td>Bone Pelvis</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>Bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bone</td>
<td>Bone Spine</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>Bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain</td>
<td>Brain</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>Brain and Spinal Cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>Breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buccal Mucosa</td>
<td>Buccal Mucosa</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Lip and Oral Cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical Lymph Nodes and Unknown Primary</td>
<td>Cervical Lymph Nodes and Unknown Primary Tumor of The Head and Neck</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Cervical Lymph Nodes and Unknown Primary Tumors of Head and Neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervix</td>
<td>Cervix</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>Cervix Uteri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS Other</td>
<td>CNS Other</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>Brain and Spinal Cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colon and Rectum (including NET)</td>
<td>Colon and Rectum</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Colon and Rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colon and Rectum (including NET)</td>
<td>NET Colon and Rectum</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>Neuroendocrine Tumors of the Colon and Rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjunctiva</td>
<td>Conjunctiva</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>Conjunctival Carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpus Carcinoma and Carcinosarcoma</td>
<td>Corpus Carcinoma</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>Corpus Uteri-Carcinoma and Carcinosarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SS Chapter</td>
<td>EOD Schema</td>
<td>AJCC Chap. No</td>
<td>AJCC Chapter Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpus Sarcoma (including Adenosarcoma)</td>
<td>Corpus Adenosarcoma</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>Corpus Uteri-Sarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corpus Sarcoma (including Adenosarcoma)</td>
<td>Corpus Sarcoma</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>Corpus Uteri-Sarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digestive Other</td>
<td>Digestive Other</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endocrine Other</td>
<td>Endocrine Other</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esophagus (including GE junction)</td>
<td>Esophagus (including GE junction) Squamous</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Esophagus and Esophagogastric Junction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esophagus (including GE junction)</td>
<td>Esophagus (including GE junction) (excluding Squamous)</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Esophagus and Esophagogastric Junction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extrahepatic Bile Ducts</td>
<td>Bile Ducts Distal</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Distal Bile Duct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extrahepatic Bile Ducts</td>
<td>Bile Ducts Perihilar</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Perihilar Bile Duct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extrahepatic Bile Ducts</td>
<td>Cystic Duct</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Gallbladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eye Other</td>
<td>Eye Other</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fallopian Tube</td>
<td>Fallopian Tube</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>Ovary, Fallopian Tube, and Primary Peritoneal Carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor of Mouth</td>
<td>Floor of Mouth</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Lip and Oral Cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallbladder</td>
<td>Gallbladder</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Gallbladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genital Female Other</td>
<td>Genital Female Other</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genital Male Other</td>
<td>Genital Male Other</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GIST</td>
<td>GIST</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal Stromal Tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gum</td>
<td>Gum</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Lip and Oral Cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart and Mediastinum</td>
<td>Heart and Mediastinum</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>Soft Tissue Sarcoma of the Abdomen and Thoracic Visceral Organs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HemeRetic</td>
<td>HemeRetic</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>Leukemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypopharynx</td>
<td>Hypopharynx</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Oropharynx (p16-) and Hypopharynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ill-Defined Other</td>
<td>Ill-Defined Other</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intracranial Gland</td>
<td>Intracranial Gland</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>Brain and Spinal Cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrahepatic Bile Ducts</td>
<td>Bile Ducts Intrahepatic</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>Intrahepatic Bile Duct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaposi Sarcoma</td>
<td>Kaposi Sarcoma</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>Soft Tissue Sarcoma of Unusual Sites and Histologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kidney Parenchyma</td>
<td>Kidney Parenchyma</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kidney Renal Pelvis</td>
<td>Kidney Renal Pelvis</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>Renal Pelvis and Ureter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacrimal Gland/Sac</td>
<td>Lacrimal Gland</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>Lacrimal Gland Carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacrimal Gland/Sac</td>
<td>Lacrimal Sac</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larynx Glottic</td>
<td>Larynx Glottic</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Larynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SS Chapter</td>
<td>EOD Schema</td>
<td>AJCC Chap. No</td>
<td>AJCC Chapter Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larynx Other</td>
<td>Larynx Other</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Larynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larynx SubGlottic</td>
<td>Larynx SubGlottic</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Larynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Larynx SupraGlottic</td>
<td>Larynx SupraGlottic</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Larynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lip</td>
<td>Lip</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Lip and Oral Cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver</td>
<td>Liver</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>Lung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphoma</td>
<td>Lymphoma</td>
<td>79, 80</td>
<td>Hodgkin and Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma (Adult and Pediatric chapters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphoma</td>
<td>Lymphoma-CLL/SLL</td>
<td>79, 80</td>
<td>Hodgkin and Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma (Adult and Pediatric chapters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphoma Ocular Adnexa</td>
<td>Lymphoma Ocular Adnexa</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>Ocular Adnexal Lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major Salivary Glands</td>
<td>Major Salivary Glands</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Major Salivary Glands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melanoma Conjunctiva</td>
<td>Melanoma Conjunctiva</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>Conjunctival Melanoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melanoma Head and Neck</td>
<td>Melanoma Head and Neck</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Mucosal Melanoma of the Head and Neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melanoma Skin</td>
<td>Melanoma Skin</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>Melanoma of the Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melanoma Uvea</td>
<td>Melanoma Choroid and Ciliary Body</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>Uveal Melanoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melanoma Uvea</td>
<td>Melanoma Iris</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>Uveal Melanoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merkel Cell Skin</td>
<td>Merkel Cell Skin</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>Merkel Cell Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle Ear</td>
<td>Middle Ear</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mouth Other</td>
<td>Mouth Other</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Lip and Oral Cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycosis Fungoides</td>
<td>Mycosis Fungoides and Sézary Syndrome</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>Primary Cutaneous Lymphomas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myeloma Plasma Cell Disorder</td>
<td>Plasma Cell Myeloma</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>Plasma Cell Myeloma and Plasma Cell Disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myeloma Plasma Cell Disorder</td>
<td>Plasmacytomomas</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>Plasma Cell Myeloma and Plasma Cell Disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasal Cavity and Paranasal Sinuses</td>
<td>Maxillary Sinus</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Nasal Cavity and Paranasal Sinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasal Cavity and Paranasal Sinuses</td>
<td>Nasal Cavity and Ethmoid Sinus</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Nasal Cavity and Paranasal Sinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasopharynx</td>
<td>Nasopharynx</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Nasopharynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbit</td>
<td>Orbital Sarcoma</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>Orbital Sarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oropharynx</td>
<td>Oropharynx HPV-Mediated (p16+)</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>HPV-Mediated (p16+) Oropharyngeal Cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oropharynx</td>
<td>Oropharynx (p16-)</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Oropharynx (p16-) and Hypopharynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SS Chapter</td>
<td>EOD Schema</td>
<td>AJCC Chap. No</td>
<td>AJCC Chapter Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovary and Primary Peritoneal Carcinoma</td>
<td>Ovary</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>Ovary, Fallopian Tube, and Primary Peritoneal Carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovary and Primary Peritoneal Carcinoma</td>
<td>Primary Peritoneal Carcinoma</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>Ovary, Fallopian Tube, and Primary Peritoneal Carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palate Hard</td>
<td>Palate Hard</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Lip and Oral Cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreas (including NET)</td>
<td>Pancreas</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>Exocrine Pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreas (including NET)</td>
<td>NET Pancreas</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>Neuroendocrine Tumors of the Pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parathyroid</td>
<td>Parathyroid</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>Parathyroid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penis</td>
<td>Penis</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>Penis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharynx Other</td>
<td>Pharynx Other</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Placenta</td>
<td>Placenta</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>Gestational Trophoblastic Neoplasms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleural Mesothelioma</td>
<td>Pleural Mesothelioma</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>Malignant Pleural Mesothelioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Cutaneous Lymphomas: Non-MF/SS</td>
<td>Primary Cutaneous Lymphomas: Non-MF/SS</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>Primary Cutaneous Lymphomas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostate</td>
<td>Prostate</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>Prostate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory Other</td>
<td>Respiratory Other</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retinoblastoma</td>
<td>Retinoblastoma</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>Retinoblastoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retroperitoneum</td>
<td>Retroperitoneum</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>Soft Tissue Sarcoma of the Retroperitoneum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinus Other</td>
<td>Sinus Other</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin (except Eyelid)</td>
<td>Cutaneous Carcinoma of Head and Neck</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Cutaneous Carcinoma of the Head and Neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin (except Eyelid)</td>
<td>Skin Other</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin Eyelid</td>
<td>Skin Eyelid</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>Eyelid Carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small Intestine (including NET)</td>
<td>Small Intestine</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Small Intestine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small Intestine (including NET)</td>
<td>NET Duodenum</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Neuroendocrine Tumors of the Duodenum and Ampulla of Vater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small Intestine (including NET)</td>
<td>NET Jejunum and Ileum</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>Neuroendocrine Tumors of the Jejunum and Ileum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
<td>Soft Tissue Head and Neck</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Soft Tissue Sarcoma of the Head and Neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
<td>Soft Tissue Trunk and Extremities</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>Soft Tissue Sarcoma of the Trunk and Extremities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
<td>Soft Tissue Abdomen and Thoracic (excluding Heart, Mediastinum, Pleura)</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>Soft Tissue Sarcoma of the Abdomen and Thoracic Visceral Organs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SS Chapter</td>
<td>EOD Schema</td>
<td>AJCC Chap. No</td>
<td>AJCC Chapter Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
<td>Soft Tissue Other</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>Soft Tissue Sarcoma of Unusual Sites and Histologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stomach (including NET)</td>
<td>Stomach</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>Stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stomach (including NET)</td>
<td>NET Stomach</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>Neuroendocrine Tumors of the Stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testis</td>
<td>Testis</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>Testis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thymus</td>
<td>Thymus</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>Thymus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid (including Medullary)</td>
<td>Thyroid</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>Thyroid-Differentiated and Anaplastic Carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid (including Medullary)</td>
<td>Thyroid Medullary</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>Thyroid-Medullary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tongue Anterior</td>
<td>Tongue Anterior</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Lip and Oral Cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trachea</td>
<td>Trachea</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethra (including prostatic)</td>
<td>Urethra</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>Urethra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urethra (including prostatic)</td>
<td>Urethra-Prostatic</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>Urethra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary Other</td>
<td>Urinary Other</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vagina</td>
<td>Vagina</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>Vagina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vulva</td>
<td>Vulva</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Vulva</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
HEAD AND NECK

DEFINITION OF ANATOMIC SITES WITHIN THE HEAD AND NECK

*Note:* Not all sites in the lip, oral cavity, pharynx and salivary glands are listed below. All sites to which a Summary Stage chapter applies are listed at the beginning of the chapter.

**LIP, ORAL CAVITY and PHARYNX**

The oral cavity extends from the skin-vermilion junction of the lips to the junction of the hard and soft palate above and to the line of circumvallate papillae below.

**LIP AND ORAL CAVITY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LIPS</td>
<td>C00_</td>
<td>Vermilion surface, mucosal lip, labial (mucosa) upper and lower, form the upper and lower anterior wall of the oral cavity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>They consist of an exposed surface of modified epidermis beginning at the junction of the vermilion border with the skin and including only the vermilion surface or that portion of the lip that meets the opposing lip.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The lips extend from commissure to commissure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMISSURE OF LIP</td>
<td>C006</td>
<td>(corner of mouth) is the point of union of upper and lower lips and is part of the lip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANTERIOR 2/3 OF TONGUE</td>
<td>C02_</td>
<td>(mobile or oral tongue) consists of the freely movable portion of the tongue which extends anteriorly from the line of circumvallate papillae to the root of the tongue at the junction of the floor of the mouth. It is composed of four areas: tip, lateral borders, dorsum, and undersurface or ventral surface (non-villous surface).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPPER GUM</td>
<td>C030</td>
<td>(upper alveolar ridge) is the covering mucosa of the alveolar process of the maxilla, extending from the line of attachment of mucosa in the upper gingival buccal gutter to the junction of the hard palate. Its posterior margin is the upper end of the pterygopalatine arch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOWER GUM</td>
<td>C031</td>
<td>(lower alveolar ridge) includes the alveolar process of the mandible and its covering mucosa, which extends from the line of attachment of mucosa in the buccal gutter to the line of free mucosa of the floor of the mouth. Posteriorly it extends to the ascending ramus of the mandible (see retromolar area).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOOR OF MOUTH</td>
<td>C04_</td>
<td>Consists of a semilunar shaped space over the mylohyoid and hypoglossus muscles, extending from the inner surface of the lower alveolar ridge to the undersurface of the tongue. Its posterior boundary is the base of the anterior pillar of the tonsil. It is divided into two sides by the frenulum of the tongue and contains the ostia of the submaxillary and lingual salivary glands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HARD PALATE</td>
<td>C050</td>
<td>Consists of the semilunar area between the upper alveolar ridges and the mucous membrane covering the palatine process of maxillary palatine bones. It extends from the inner surface of the superior alveolar ridge to the posterior edge of the palatine bone.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**OTHER MOUTH**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C058, C059, C068, C069</td>
<td>Includes overlapping lesions of the palate, overlapping lesions of other and unspecified parts of mouth, and non-specific terms roof of mouth (palate, NOS); mouth, NOS (oral cavity, oral mucosa, buccal cavity); and minor salivary gland, NOS.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BUCCAL MUCOSA**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C060</td>
<td>Includes all the mucous membrane lining the inner surface of the cheek. In ICD-O and the Summary Stage system, buccal mucosa includes the inner surface of the cheeks but not the inner mucosal surface of the lips. In the AJCC staging system, the inner mucosa of the lips is included with the buccal mucosa in the oral cavity chapter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**VESTIBULE OF MOUTH**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C061</td>
<td>Buccal sulcus, alveolar sulcus, labial sulcus is the space between the teeth and the lips or cheeks and the mucosa that covers it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RETROMOLAR AREA**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C062</td>
<td>Retromolar triangle, retromolar gingiva, retromolar area is the attached mucosa overlying the ascending ramus of the mandible from the level of the posterior surface of the last molar tooth to the apex superiorly. The retromolar trigone is coded using the same Summary Stage chapter as the gingiva or gums.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAROTID GLAND AND OTHER MAJOR SALIVARY GLANDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C079, C080, C081</td>
<td>The parotid glands (C079) and the other major salivary glands, submandibular (submaxillary) (C080) and sublingual/submental (C081) are paired glands lying along the mandible and beneath the floor of the mouth which produce serous or mucous secretions to moisten the mouth and begin the process of digestion.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**OROPHARYNX**

The oral pharynx (oropharynx) is that portion of the continuity of the pharynx extending from the plane of the inferior surface of the soft palate to the plane of the superior surface of the hyoid bone (or floor of the vallecula) and includes the base of tongue, inferior surface of the soft palate and the uvula, the anterior and posterior tonsillar pillars, the glossotonsillar sulci, the pharyngeal tonsils, and the lateral and posterior walls.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BASE OF TONGUE</td>
<td>C019</td>
<td>Base of tongue, tongue (root of tongue) consists of the less mobile portion of the tongue which extends inferiorly from the line of circumvallate papillae to the base of the epiglottis, the pharyngoepiglottic and glossoepiglottic folds (which bound the vallecula).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LINGUAL TONSIL</td>
<td>C024</td>
<td>The lymphoid tissue that is contained in the base of the tongue. In the Summary Stage system, lingual tonsil is coded using the same chapter as base of tongue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TONSILS</td>
<td>C099, C111, C142</td>
<td>Tonsils are the mucosa-covered lymphoid tissues lying between the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal arches on the sidewalls of the oropharynx (palatine tonsils, C099), on the posterior wall of the nasopharynx (pharyngeal tonsils or adenoids, C111) and embedded in the base of the tongue (lingual tonsil, C024; described above). These three areas appear to form a ring of lymphoid tissue around the pharynx, which is referred to as Waldeyer ring (C142)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UVULA</td>
<td>C052</td>
<td>A soft tissue projection on the free border of the soft palate in the midline of the body. In Summary Stage, the uvula is coded using the same chapter as the soft palate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Soft Palate

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOFT PALATE</td>
<td>C051</td>
<td>Consists of mucosa covering the oral cavity side of the palatine muscles and extends from the posterior edge of the hard palate to the free border of the soft palate and includes the uvula. Its superior lateral margin is the pterygomandibular raphe. The inferior lateral margin completes the faucial arch (glossopalatine arch) and includes the anterior surface of the anterior tonsillar pillar.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Oropharynx

#### Lateral Wall

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OROPHARYNX LATERAL WALL</td>
<td>C090, C091, C099, C102</td>
<td>Includes the tonsillar fossae (C090), tonsillar pillars (C091) and tonsils (C099) of the oropharynx.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Anterior Wall

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OROPHARYNX ANTERIOR WALL</td>
<td>C100, C101</td>
<td>Consists of the pharyngoepiglottic and glossoepiglottic folds which bound the vallecula (C100), and the lingual (anterior) surface of the epiglottis (C101). The vallecula is the hollow or sulcus formed at the junction of the base of the tongue and the epiglottis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Posterior Wall

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OROPHARYNX POSTERIOR WALL</td>
<td>C103</td>
<td>Extends from the free borders of the soft palate to the tip of the epiglottis in the oropharynx.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Nasopharynx

The nasopharynx begins anteriorly at the posterior choana and extends along the plane of the airway to the level of the free border of the soft palate. It includes the vault, floor (superior surface of soft palate), posterior wall, lateral walls including the fossae of Rosenmuller and the mucosa covering the torus tubarius forming the eustachian tube orifice. According to the AJCC, the posterior margins of the choanal orifices and of the nasal septum are included in the nasal fossa (which has no AJCC chapter), and are excluded from the nasopharynx staging system. However, all subsites listed above (except nasal fossa) are included in the nasopharynx Summary Stage chapter. Specific anatomic descriptions of major nasopharyngeal subsites include:

#### Superior, Posterior

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SUPERIOR, POSTERIOR</td>
<td>C110, C111</td>
<td>Extends from the superior border of the choana to the level of the free border of the soft palate. The lateral limit is the groove between the lateral wall and the base of the skull.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Lateral Wall

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LATERAL WALL</td>
<td>C112</td>
<td>Extends from the base of the skull on each side to the level of the free border of the soft palate. It includes Rosenmuller fossae (pharyngeal recesses).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hypopharynx

The hypopharynx is that portion of the pharynx extending from the plane of the superior border of the hyoid bone (or floor of the vallecula) to the plane corresponding to the lower border of the cricoid cartilage and includes the pyriform fossae, the lateral and posterior hypopharyngeal walls and the postcricoid region.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PYRIFORM SINUS</td>
<td>C129</td>
<td>Extends from the pharyngoepiglottic fold to the upper edge of the esophagus at the lower border of the cricoid cartilage and is bounded laterally by the inner surface of the thyroid cartilage and medially by the hypopharyngeal surface of the aryepiglottic fold, posterior lateral surface of the arytenoid and cricoid cartilages.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
POSTCRICOID AREA

C130

Postcricoid region or cricopharynx extends from the posterior surface of the arytenoid cartilages and their connecting folds to the inferior surface of the cricoid cartilage and connects the two pyriform sinuses. The lateral margin is the anterior portion of the pyriform sinus.

POSTERIOR PHARYNGEAL WALL

C132

Extends from the superior level of the hyoid bone (or floor of the vallecula) to the inferior margin of the cricoid cartilage, and from the apex of one pyriform sinus to the other.

LARYNX

**Anterior Limits** is bounded by the anterior or lingual surface of the suprahypoid epiglottis, thyrohyoid membrane, the anterior commissure, and the anterior wall of the subglottic region, which is composed of the thyroid cartilage, the cricothyroid membrane, and the anterior arch of the cricoid cartilage.

**Posterior Lateral Limits** include the aryepiglottic folds, the arytenoid region, the interarytenoid space, and the posterior surface of the subglottic space represented by the mucous membrane covering the cricoid cartilage.

**Superior Lateral Limits** are bounded by the tip and the lateral border of the epiglottis.

**Inferior Limits** are bounded by a plane passing through the inferior edge of the cricoid cartilage.

The larynx is divided into the following anatomic regions and sites:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Glottic</td>
<td>C320</td>
<td>Glottis&lt;br&gt;Anterior and posterior commissures&lt;br&gt;True vocal cords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supraglottic</td>
<td>C321</td>
<td>Arytenoids&lt;br&gt;Epiglottis (both lingual and laryngeal aspects)&lt;br&gt;Aryepiglottic folds&lt;br&gt;Infrahypoid epiglottis&lt;br&gt;Supraglottis&lt;br&gt;Left&lt;br&gt;Right&lt;br&gt;Suprhypoid epiglottis&lt;br&gt;Ventricular bands (false cord)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subglottic</td>
<td>C322</td>
<td>Right and left walls of the subglottis&lt;br&gt;Subglottis (rima glottidis)&lt;br&gt;Exclusive of the undersurface of the cords</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REGIONAL LYMPH NODES FOR HEAD AND NECK PRIMARIES

With the release of AJCC 7th edition in 2010, Level I-Level VII and “other” regional nodes in the head and neck region were made regional for all head and neck subsites. This change was not incorporated into Summary Stage 2000. For Summary Stage 2018, the head and neck nodes listed below, which are regional for AJCC 8th edition, will be made regional. This change is effective for cases diagnosed for 1/1/2018 and forward only.

The lymph nodes below are regional for all Head and Neck sites (C00-C14, C30-C33) and include: Single, Multiple, Bilateral and Contralateral lymph nodes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level I</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Level IA - Submental</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level II - Upper jugular</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper deep cervical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level IIA - Anterior</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level IIB - Posterior</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level III - Middle jugular</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Middle deep cervical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level IV - Lower jugular</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower deep cervical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virchow node</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level V - Posterior triangle group</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Posterior cervical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level VA - Spinal accessory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level VI - Anterior compartment group</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laterotracheal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paralaryngeal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pericythroidal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Precricoid (Delphian)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prelaryngeal</th>
<th>Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch</th>
<th>Recurrent laryngeal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Level VII - Superior mediastinal group**

(other mediastinal nodes are distant nodes)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Esophageal groove</th>
<th>Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch</th>
<th>Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Other groups**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cervical, NOS</th>
<th>Deep cervical, NOS</th>
<th>Facial</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buccinator (buccal)</td>
<td>Mandibular</td>
<td>Nasolabial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal jugular, NOS</td>
<td>Parapharyngeal</td>
<td>Parotid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infraauricular</td>
<td>Intraparotid</td>
<td>Preparotid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retroauricular (mastoid)</td>
<td>Retropharyngeal</td>
<td>Suboccipital</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DISTINGUISHING “IN SITU” AND “LOCALIZED” TUMORS FOR LIP, ORAL CAVITY, AND PHARYNX

LIP AND ORAL CAVITY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRIMARY SITE</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>MUCOSA -Epithelium -Basement Membrane -Lamina Propria</th>
<th>SUBMUCOSA</th>
<th>MUSCULARIS PROPRIA</th>
<th>SEROSA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LIP</td>
<td>C00_</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TONGUE ANTERIOR</td>
<td>C01_, C02-</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUM</td>
<td>C03_, C062</td>
<td>Yes (muco-periosteum)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOOR of MOUTH</td>
<td>C04_</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUCCAL MUCOSA</td>
<td>C060, C061</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HARD PALATE</td>
<td>C050</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTHER MOUTH</td>
<td>C058, C059, C068, C069</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Historically, carcinomas described as “confined to mucosa” have been assigned 1 (localized). In order to provide greater specificity and to rule out the possibility of classifying noninvasive tumors in this category, abstractors should determine if
   a. The tumor is confined to the epithelium, in which case it is in situ OR
   b. The tumor has penetrated the basement membrane to invade the lamina propria, in which case Summary Stage is assigned 1 (localized).

2. The layers the oral cavity consist of
   a. The EPITHELIAL LAYER which borders on the lumen and contains no blood vessels or lymphatics
   b. The BASEMENT MEMBRANE, a sheet of extracellular material, functions as a filtration barrier and a boundary involved in generating and maintaining tissue structure
   c. The LAMINA PROPIA, composed of areolar connective tissue, contains blood vessels, nerves, and, in some regions, glands. Once tumor has broken through the basement membrane into the lamina propria, it can spread by way of the lymphatics and blood vessels to other parts of the body

3. The lip, oral cavity and pharynx lack a MUSCULARIS MUCOSAE. Therefore, the lamina propria and the submucosa tend to merge, and the two terms are used interchangeably.

4. The SUBMUCOSA is a thick layer of either dense or areolar connective tissue. It contains blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, nerves, and, in some regions, glands. Only the GUM and HARD PALATE lack a submucosa, but rather a mucoperiosteum.
5. The **MUSCULARIS PROPRIA** is muscle tissue which constitutes the wall of the organ. The GUM and HARD PALATE lack a muscularis.

6. There is no **SEROsa** on any of the head and neck sites.
CERVICAL LYMPH NODES AND UNKNOWN PRIMARY TUMORS OF HEAD AND NECK

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8941, 9700-9701
Schema Discriminator 1 Occult Head and Neck Lymph Nodes: 2, 3, 4, 5

C760
C760 Head, face & neck, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: Schema Discriminator 1: Occult Head and Neck Lymph Nodes is used to discriminate between Cervical Lymph Nodes and Unknown Primary Tumor of the Head and Neck, Ill-Defined Other and Soft Tissue Other when primary site is C760.

Note 3: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701 (Schema Discriminator 1 Occult Head and Neck Lymph Nodes: 0,1): Ill-defined Other
- 8941(Schema Discriminator 1 Occult Head and Neck Lymph Nodes: 0,1): Soft Tissue
- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940, 8950-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 4: Codes 0, 1, 2, and 4 are not applicable for this chapter.

Note 5: This chapter applies when cervical lymph nodes are involved with cancer and the primary site is not known but is suspected to be in the head and neck, i.e., in one or more of the sites listed below. Cancer registry standard setters have agreed that such cancers should be coded to primary site code C760 to accommodate staging recommended by AJCC.

- Lip: C003-C005, C008-C009
- Base of Tongue: C019
- Other and Unspecified Parts of Tongue: C020-C024, C028, C029
- Gum: C030-C031, C039
- Floor of Mouth: C040-C041, C048-C049
- Palate: C050-C052, C058-C059
- Other and Unspecified Parts of Mouth: C060-C062, C068-C069
- Parotid gland: C079
- Major Salivary Glands: C080-C081, C088-C089
- Tonsil: C090-C091, C098-C099
- Oropharynx: C100-C104, C108-C109
- Nasopharynx: C110-C113, C118-C119
- Pyriform sin: C129
- Hypopharynx: C130-C132, C138-C139
- Other and Ill-defined Sites in Lip, Oral Cavity and Pharynx: C140, C142, C148
- Nasal cavity: C300
- Middle ear: C301
- Accessory Sinuses: C310-C313, C318-C319
- Larynx: C320-C323, C328-C329
- Skin of lip: C440
- Skin of ear & external auricular canal: C442
- Skin of other & unspecified parts of face: C443
- Skin of scalp & neck: C444

**Note 6:** If the physician indicates that the metastatic cervical lymph node is most likely from a head and neck primary, then code primary site as C760. If the differential diagnosis includes non-head and neck sites, for example, the path report states metastasis to the cervical lymph node could be from a head and neck primary, lung primary, or gynecologic primary OR if there is no information indicating origin of primary tumor, then code primary site as C809 (Ill Defined Other)

**SUMMARY STAGE**

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
- Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  - Laterotracheal
  - Paralaryngeal
  - Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Perithyroidal
  - Precricoid (Delphian)
  - Prelaryngeal
  - Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Recurrent laryngeal
- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial
    - Buccinator (buccal)
    - Mandibular
    - Nasolabial
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid
    - Infraauricular
    - Intraparotid
    - Periparotid
    - Preauricular
  - Retroauricular (mastoid)
  - Retropharyngeal
  - Suboccipital
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Bone, NOS
  - Cartilage, NOS
  - Cortical bone (mandible, maxilla, NOS)
  - Deep (extrinsic) muscle of tongue
    - Genioglossus
    - Hyoglossus
• Palatoglossus
  • Styloglossus
    o Hard palate including cortical palatine bone
    o Internal carotid artery (encased)
    o Mandible, NOS
    o Masticator space
    o Maxilla, NOS
    o Maxillary sinus (antrum)
    o Nasal cavity
    o Pterygoid plates
    o Skin of cheek (WITH or WITHOUT ulceration)
    o Skull base
    o Soft palate
    o Specified bone (other than maxilla, mandible, palatine)
    o Tongue
    o Trabecular bone (mandible, maxilla, palatine, NOS)
• Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  o Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s))
• Distant metastasis, NOS
  o Carcinomatosis
  o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

**9 Unknown if extension or metastasis**
LIP

8000-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8982, 9700-9701

C003-C005, C008-C009
C003 Mucosa of upper lip
C004 Mucosa of lower lip
C005 Mucosa of lip, NOS
C008 Overlapping lesion of lip
C009 Lip, NOS (excludes skin of lip C440)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8041, 8190, 8247: Merkel Cell Skin
- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Periosteum is a fibrous membrane that wraps the outer surface of bones. Cortical bone is the dense compact outer layer of the bone. Trabecular, cancellous, or spongy bone (spongiosa) is a porous network of tissue filling the interior of bone, decreasing weight and allowing room for blood vessels and marrow.

Note 4: Involvement through cortical bone is required for assignment of code 2.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to lip, NOS
- Labial mucosa (inner lip)
- Lamina propria
  - Multiple foci
  - Submucosa (superficial invasion)
- Musculature
- Skin of lip
- Subcutaneous soft tissue of lip

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Bone, NOS
  - Cartilage (mandible, maxilla, NOS)
  - Cortical (mandible, maxilla, NOS)
  - Mandible, NOS
  - Maxilla, NOS
  - Trabecular (mandible, maxilla, NOS)
- Buccal mucosa (inner cheek)
- Commissure
- Gingiva, NOS
  - Lower gingiva
  - Upper gingiva
- Opposite lip (both lips)

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  - Laterotracheal
- Paralaryngeal
- Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
- Perithyroidal
- Precricoid (Delphian)
- Prelaryngeal
- Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
- Recurrent laryngeal

- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch

- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial
    - Buccinator (buccal)
    - Mandibular
    - Nasolabial
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid
    - Infraauricular
    - Intraparotid
    - Periparotid
    - Preauricular
  - Retroauricular (mastoid)
  - Retropharyngeal
  - Suboccipital

- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Floor of mouth
  - Inferior alveolar nerve
  - Internal carotid artery (encased)
  - Masticator space
  - Nose
  - Pterygoid plates
- Skin of face/neck
- Skull base
- Specified bone (other than mandible and maxilla)

**Distant lymph node(s), NOS**
- Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s))

**Distant metastasis, NOS**
- Carcinomatosis
- Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

**9 Unknown if extension or metastasis**
TONGUE ANTERIOR

8000-8700, 8982, 9700-9701

C020-C023, C028-C029
C020 Dorsal surface of tongue, NOS
C021 Border of tongue (Tip)
C022 Ventral surface of tongue, NOS
C023 Anterior 2/3 of tongue, NOS
C028 Overlapping lesion of tongue
C029 Tongue, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Periosteum is a fibrous membrane that wraps the outer surface of bones. Cortical bone is the dense compact outer layer of the bone. Trabecular, cancellous, or spongy bone (spongiosa) is a porous network of tissue filling the interior of bone, decreasing weight and allowing room for blood vessels and marrow.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to anterior tongue, NOS
- Crosses midline/midline tumor
- Invasive tumor on one side confined to
  - Lamina propria
• Musculature of tongue, intrinsic or NOS
• Submucosa

2 Regional by direct extension only

• Base of tongue
• Bone, NOS
  • Bone (mandible, maxilla, palatine)
  • Cartilage (mandible, maxilla, NOS)
  • Cortical bone, invasion of (mandible, maxilla, NOS)
• Floor of mouth
• Gingiva, lower
• Lateral pharyngeal wall
• Retromolar trigone
• Soft palate, inferior surface
• Sublingual gland
• Tonsillar pillars and fossae
• Tonsils

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

• Level I
  • Level IA - Submental
  • Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
• Level II - Upper jugular
  • Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  • Upper deep cervical
  • Level IIA - Anterior
  • Level IIB - Posterior
• Level III - Middle jugular
  • Middle deep cervical
• Level IV - Lower jugular
  • Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  • Lower deep cervical
  • Virchow node
• Level V - Posterior triangle group
  • Posterior cervical
  • Level VA - Spinal accessory
  • Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
• Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  • Laterotracheal
  • Paralaryngeal
  • Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  • Perithyroidal
- Precricoid (Delphian)
- Prelaryngeal
- Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
- Recurrent laryngeal

- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch

- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial
    - Buccinator (buccal)
    - Mandibular
    - Nasolabial
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid
    - Infraauricular
    - Intraparotid
    - Periparotid
    - Preauricular
  - Retroauricular (mastoid)
  - Retropharyngeal
  - Suboccipital

- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Deep (extrinsic) muscles of tongue
    - Genioglossus
    - Geniohyoid
    - Hyoglossus
    - Mylohyoid
    - Palatoglossus
    - Styloglossus
  - Internal carotid artery (encased)
  - Masticator space
- Maxillary sinus (antrum)
- Pterygoid plates
- Skin of face
- Skull base
- Specified bone (other than mandible, maxilla)
- Trabecular bone (mandible, maxilla, NOS)

- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s), Level VII)

- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
GUM

8000-8700, 8982, 9700-9701

C030-C031, C039, C062
C030 Upper gum
C031 Lower gum
C039 Gum, NOS
C062 Retromolar area (gingiva, trigone)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8981, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Periosteum is a fibrous membrane that wraps the outer surface of bones. Cortical bone is the dense compact outer layer of the bone. Trabecular, cancellous, or spongy bone (spongiosa) is a porous network of tissue filling the interior of bone, decreasing weight and allowing room for blood vessels and marrow.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to gum, NOS
- Invasive tumor confined to lamina propria (mucoperiosteum) (stroma)
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Bone, NOS
- Bone (mandible, maxilla, palatine)
- Buccal mucosa (inner cheek)
- Cartilage (mandible, maxilla, NOS)
- Cortical bone (mandible, maxilla, NOS)
- Deep (extrinsic) muscle of tongue
  - Genioglossus
  - Hyoglossus
  - Palatoglossus
  - Styloglossus
- Facial muscle, NOS
- Floor of mouth
- Hard palate (includes cortical palatine bone)
- Labial mucosa (inner lip)
- Lateral pharyngeal wall
- Lip, NOS
- Soft palate including uvula
- Subcutaneous soft tissue of face
- Tongue mucosa/intrinsic muscle
- Tonsillar pillars and fossae
- Tonsils
- Trabecular bone (mandible, maxilla, palatine, NOS)

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
• Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  o Laterotracheal
  o Paralaryngeal
  o Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  o Perithyroidal
  o Precricoid (Delphian)
  o Prelaryngeal
  o Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  o Recurrent laryngeal
• Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  o Esophageal groove
  o Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  o Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
• Other groups
  o Cervical, NOS
  o Deep cervical, NOS
  o Facial
    ▪ Buccinator (buccal)
    ▪ Mandibular
    ▪ Nasolabial
  o Internal jugular, NOS
  o Parapharyngeal
  o Parotid
    ▪ Infraauricular
    ▪ Intraparotid
    ▪ Periparotid
    ▪ Preauricular
  o Retroauricular (mastoid)
  o Retropharyngeal
  o Suboccipital
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved
• Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved
• Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  o Internal carotid artery (encased)
  o Masticator space
  o Maxillary sinus/antrum
  o Nasal cavity
- Nose
- Pterygoid plates
- Skin of face
- Skull base
- Specified bone (other than mandible, maxilla, palatine)

- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s), Level VII)

- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
FLOOR OF MOUTH

8000-8700, 8982, 9700-9701

C040-C041, C048-C049
C040 Anterior floor of mouth
C041 Lateral floor of mouth
C048 Overlapping lesion of floor of mouth
C049 Floor of mouth, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Periosteum is a fibrous membrane that wraps the outer surface of bones. Cortical bone is the dense compact outer layer of the bone. Trabecular, cancellous, or spongy bone (spongiosa) is a porous network of tissue filling the interior of bone, decreasing weight and allowing room for blood vessels and marrow.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to floor of mouth, NOS
- Invasive tumor on one side confined to
  o Lamina propria
  o Submucosa
  o Tumor crosses midline
- Deep (extrinsic) muscle of tongue
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Anterior 2/3 of tongue
- Base of tongue
- Bone, NOS
  - Cartilage, NOS
  - Cortical bone (mandible, NOS)
  - Mandible, NOS
  - Periosteum of mandible
  - Trabecular bone (mandible, NOS)
- Epiglottis
- Gingiva (alveolar ridge), lower
- Glossoepiglottic fold
- Glossopharyngeal sulcus
- Lateral pharyngeal wall
- Pharyngeal (lingual) surface
- Pharyngoepiglottic fold
- Skin of undersurface of chin/neck
- Subcutaneous soft tissue of chin/neck
- Sublingual gland, including ducts
- Submandibular (submaxillary) glands, including ducts
- Tonsillar pillars and fossae
- Tonsils
- Vallecula

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
• Level IV - Lower jugular
  o Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  o Lower deep cervical
  o Virchow node
• Level V - Posterior triangle group
  o Posterior cervical
  o Level VA - Spinal accessory
  o Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
• Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  o Laterotracheal
  o Paralaryngeal
  o Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  o Perithyroidal
  o Precricoid (Delphian)
  o Prelaryngeal
  o Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  o Recurrent laryngeal
• Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  o Esophageal groove
  o Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  o Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
• Other groups
  o Cervical, NOS
  o Deep cervical, NOS
  o Facial
    ▪ Buccinator (buccal)
    ▪ Mandibular
    ▪ Nasolabial
  o Internal jugular, NOS
  o Parapharyngeal
  o Parotid
    ▪ Infraauricular
    ▪ Intraparotid
    ▪ Periparotid
    ▪ Preauricular
  o Retroauricular (mastoid)
  o Retropharyngeal
  o Suboccipital
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Cortical bone (maxilla)
  - Internal carotid artery (encased)
  - Masticator space
  - Maxilla, NOS
  - Maxillary sinus (antrum)
  - Pterygoid plates
  - Skull base
  - Specified bone (other than mandible, maxilla)
  - Trabecular bone (maxilla)
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s), Level VII)
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
PALATE HARD

8000-8700, 8982, 9700-9701

C050
C050 Hard palate

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Periosteum is a fibrous membrane that wraps the outer surface of bones. Cortical bone is the dense compact outer layer of the bone. Trabecular, cancellous, or spongy bone (spongiosa) is a porous network of tissue filling the interior of bone, decreasing weight and allowing room for blood vessels and marrow.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to hard palate, NOS
- Crosses midline
- Invasive tumor on one side confined to mucoperiosteum (stroma)

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Bone, NOS
  - Cortical bone (maxilla, palatine, NOS)
- Maxilla, NOS
- Palatine bone, NOS
- Trabecular bone (maxilla, palatine)
- Buccal mucosa (inner cheek)
- Cortical bone (mandible, maxilla, NOS)
- Gingiva, upper
- Glossopalatine arch
- Pharyngopalatine arch
- Soft palate including uvula

### 3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- **Level I**
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- **Level II - Upper jugular**
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- **Level III - Middle jugular**
  - Middle deep cervical
- **Level IV - Lower jugular**
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- **Level V - Posterior triangle group**
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- **Level VI - Anterior compartment group**
  - Laterotracheal
  - Paralaryngeal
  - Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Perithyroidal
  - Precricoid (Delphian)
  - Prelaryngeal
  - Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Recurrent laryngeal
- **Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)**
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
- **Other groups**
  - Cervical, NOS
- Deep cervical, NOS
- Facial
  - Buccinator (buccal)
  - Mandibular
  - Nasolabial
- Internal jugular, NOS
- Parapharyngeal
- Parotid
  - Infraauricular
  - Intraparotid
  - Periparotid
  - Preauricular
- Retroauricular (mastoid)
- Retropharyngeal
- Suboccipital
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Deep (extrinsic) muscle of tongue
    - Genioglossus
    - Hyoglossus
    - Palatoglossus
    - Styloglossus
  - Floor of nose
  - Internal carotid artery (encased)
  - Mandible
  - Masticator space
  - Maxillary sinus (antrum)
  - Nasal cavity
  - Nasopharynx
  - Pterygoid plates
  - Skin of face
  - Skull base
  - Specified bone (other than mandible, maxilla)
  - Sphenoid bone
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s), Level VII)
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
BUCCAL MUCOSA

8000-8700, 8982, 9700-9701

C060-C061
C060 Cheek mucosa
C061 Vestibule of mouth

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Periosteum is a fibrous membrane that wraps the outer surface of bones. Cortical bone is the dense compact outer layer of the bone. Trabecular, cancellous, or spongy bone (spongiosa) is a porous network of tissue filling the interior of bone, decreasing weight and allowing room for blood vessels and marrow.

Note 4: Involvement through cortical bone is required for assignment of code 2.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to buccal mucosa (inner cheek), NOS
- Lamina propria
- Musculature (buccinator)
- Submucosa
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Gingiva
- Lateral pharyngeal wall
- Lip(s) including commissure
- Subcutaneous soft tissue of cheek
- Tonsillar pillars and fossae
- Tonsils

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  - Laterotracheal
  - Paralaryngeal
  - Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Perithyroidal
  - Precricoid (Delphian)
  - Prelaryngeal
  - Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Recurrent laryngeal
- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
o Facial
  ▪ Buccinator (buccal)
  ▪ Mandibular
  ▪ Nasolabial
o Internal jugular, NOS
o Parapharyngeal
o Parotid
  ▪ Infraauricular
  ▪ Intraparotid
  ▪ Periparotid
  ▪ Preauricular
o Retroauricular (mastoid)
o Retropharyngeal
  ▪ Suboccipital
  • Regional lymph node(s), NOS
    ▪ Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved
  • Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved
  • Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
    ▪ Bone, NOS
      ▪ Cartilage (mandible, maxilla, NOS)
      ▪ Cortical bone (mandible, maxilla, NOS)
      ▪ Mandible, NOS
      ▪ Maxilla, NOS
      ▪ Palatine, NOS
      ▪ Trabecular bone (mandible, maxilla, palatine, NOS)
    ▪ Deep (extrinsic) muscle of tongue
      ▪ Genioglossus
      ▪ Hyoglossus
      ▪ Palatoglossus
      ▪ Styloglossus
    ▪ Internal carotid artery (encased)
    ▪ Masticator space
    ▪ Maxillary sinus (antrum)
    ▪ Nasal cavity
    ▪ Pterygoid plates
    ▪ Skin of cheek (WITH or WITHOUT ulceration)
    ▪ Skull base
    ▪ Specified bone (other than maxilla, mandible, palatine)
- Tongue
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s))
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
MOUTH OTHER

8000-8700, 8982, 9700-9701

C058-C059, C068-C069
C058 Overlapping lesion of palate
C059 Palate, NOS
C068 Overlapping lesion of other and unspecified parts of mouth
C069 Mouth, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Periosteum is a fibrous membrane that wraps the outer surface of bones. Cortical bone is the dense compact outer layer of the bone. Trabecular, cancellous, or spongy bone (spongiosa) is a porous network of tissue filling the interior of bone, decreasing weight and allowing room for blood vessels and marrow.

Note 4: Involvement through cortical bone is required for assignment of code 2.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to mouth, NOS
- Lamina propria
- Musculature (buccinator)
- Submucosa
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent oral cavity
- Oropharynx
  - Inferior surface of soft palate
  - Lateral pharyngeal wall
  - Lingual surface of epiglottis
  - Vallecula

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  - Laterotracheal
  - Paralaryngeal
  - Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Perithyroidal
  - Precricoid (Delphian)
  - Prelaryngeal
  - Pretotracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Recurrent laryngeal
- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretotracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
o Facial
  ▪ Buccinator (buccal)
  ▪ Mandibular
  ▪ Nasolabial
o Internal jugular, NOS
o Parapharyngeal
o Parotid
  ▪ Infraauricular
  ▪ Intraparotid
  ▪ Periparotid
  ▪ Preauricular
o Retroauricular (mastoid)
o Retropharyngeal
  ▪ Suboccipital
  • Regional lymph node(s), NOS
    ▪ Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

  • Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

  • Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
    ▪ Bone, NOS
      ▪ Cartilage (mandible, maxilla, NOS)
      ▪ Cortical bone (mandible, maxilla, NOS)
      ▪ Trabecular bone (mandible, maxilla, palatine, NOS)
    ▪ Deep (extrinsic) muscle of tongue
      ▪ Genioglossus
      ▪ Hyoglossus
      ▪ Palatoglossus
      ▪ Styloglossus
    ▪ Internal carotid artery (encased)
    ▪ Mandible, NOS
    ▪ Masticator space
    ▪ Maxilla, NOS
    ▪ Maxillary antrum (sinus)
    ▪ Nasal cavity
    ▪ Pterygoid plates
    ▪ Skin of face/neck
    ▪ Skull base
    ▪ Specified bone (other than mandible, maxilla)
    ▪ Tongue
- Distant lymph node(s)
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s))
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
MAJOR SALIVARY GLANDS

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8941, 8974, 8980, 8982, 9700-9701

C079-C081, C088-C089
C079 Parotid gland
C080 Submandibular gland
C081 Sublingual gland
C088 Overlapping lesion of major salivary glands
C089 Major salivary gland, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940, 8950-8973, 8975, 8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to gland/duct of origin
- Confined to parotid gland, NOS
- Confined to salivary gland, NOS
- Confined to submandibular gland, NOS
- Multiple foci confined to substance of parotid gland
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Extension to another major salivary gland (parotid, sublingual, submandibular, submaxillary)
- Deep extrinsic muscles (submandibular gland only)
  - Genioglossus
  - Geniohyoid
  - Hyoglossus
  - Mylohyoid
  - Styloglossus
- Ear canal
- External auditory meatus (parotid gland only)
- Facial artery or vein
- Internal carotid artery (encased)
- Jugular vein (parotid gland only)
- Mandible
- Masseter (parotid gland only)
- Mastoid/mastoid process (parotid gland only)
- Maxillary artery
- Nerves
  - Auricular (parotid gland only)
  - Facial (7th nerve) (submandibular and salivary gland only)
  - Lingual (submandibular and salivary gland only)
- Periglandular soft/connective tissue (microscopic, macroscopic, NOS)
- Periosteum of mandible
- Maxillary artery
- Pharyngeal mucosa (parotid gland only)
- Skeletal muscle
  - Digastric
  - Masseter (parotid gland only)
  - Pterygoid
  - Sternocleidomastoid (parotid gland only)
  - Stylohyoid
- Skin overlying gland (parotid gland only)

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdiagonal)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
• Level III - Middle jugular
  o Middle deep cervical
• Level IV - Lower jugular
  o Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  o Lower deep cervical
  o Virchow node
• Level V - Posterior triangle group
  o Posterior cervical
  o Level VA - Spinal accessory
  o Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
• Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  o Laterotracheal
  o Paralaryngeal
  o Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  o Perithyroidal
  o Precricoid (Delphian)
  o Prelaryngeal
  o Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  o Recurrent laryngeal
• Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  o Esophageal groove
  o Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  o Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
• Other groups
  o Cervical, NOS
  o Deep cervical, NOS
  o Facial
    ▪ Buccinator (buccal)
    ▪ Mandibular
    ▪ Nasolabial
  o Internal jugular, NOS
  o Parapharyngeal
  o Parotid
    ▪ Infraauricular
    ▪ Intraparotid
    ▪ Periparotid
    ▪ Preauricular
  o Retroauricular (mastoid)
  o Retropharyngeal
  o Suboccipital
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant sites (including further contiguous extension)
  - External auditory meatus (submandibular and salivary gland only)
  - Nerves
    - Facial (7th nerve) (parotid gland only)
    - Lingual (parotid gland only)
  - Pterygoid plates
  - Skin overlying gland (submandibular and salivary gland only)
  - Skull (base, NOS)
  - Spinal accessory nerve
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s), Level VII)
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant mets WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
NASOPHARYNX

C110, C112-C113, C118-C119: 8000-8700, 9700-9701
C111 and Schema Discriminator 1: Nasopharynx/Pharyngeal Tonsil: 1 (8000-8700, 9700-9701)

C110-C113, C118-C119
C110 Superior wall of nasopharynx
C111 Posterior wall of nasopharynx (excluding pharyngeal tonsil)
C112 Lateral wall of nasopharynx
C113 Anterior wall of nasopharynx
C118 Overlapping lesion of nasopharynx
C119 Nasopharynx, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- C111 and Schema Discriminator 1: Nasopharynx/Pharyngeal Tonsil: 2 (8000-8700, 9700-9701): *Oropharynx (p16-) and Oropharynx HPV-Mediated (p16+)
- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: The Schema Discriminator Nasopharynx/Pharyngeal Tonsil is used to discriminate between Posterior wall of nasopharynx (adenoid) and Pharyngeal tonsil which are coded to ICD-O-3 code C111

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to nasopharynx, NOS
- Invasive tumor confined to one of the following subsites
- Inferior wall (superior surface of soft palate)
- Lateral wall
- Posterior superior wall (vault)
- Involvement of two or more subsites
  - Lateral wall extending into eustachian tube/middle ear
  - Posterior, inferior, or lateral wall(s)

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Any structure listed in Code 1 WITH fixation
- Bone, NOS
- Bony structures of skull base
- Cartilage, NOS
- Cervical vertebra
- Floor of orbit
- Hard palate
- Nasal cavity WITHOUT pharyngeal extension
- Oropharynx
- Paranasal sinus
- Pterygoid structures
- Skull base
- Soft palate, inferior surface including uvula WITHOUT pharyngeal extension
- Soft tissue, NOS (excluding soft tissue of neck)

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
• Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  o Laterotracheal
  o Paralaryngeal
  o Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  o Perithyroidal
  o Precricoid (Delphian)
  o Prelaryngeal
  o Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  o Recurrent laryngeal

• Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  o Esophageal groove
  o Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  o Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch

• Other groups
  o Cervical, NOS
  o Deep cervical, NOS
  o Facial
    ▪ Buccinator (buccal)
    ▪ Mandibular
    ▪ Nasolabial
  o Internal jugular, NOS
  o Parapharyngeal
  o Parotid
    ▪ Infraauricular
    ▪ Intraparotid
    ▪ Periparotid
    ▪ Preauricular
  o Retroauricular (mastoid)
  o Retropharyngeal
  o Suboccipital

• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

• Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  o Brain
  o Cranial nerve involvement
  o Hypopharynx
  o Infratemporal fossa/masticator space
- Intracranial extension, NOS
- Orbit except bone of floor of orbit
- Parotid gland
- Soft tissues of neck
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s))
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant mets WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
Oropharynx

C019, C024, C051-C052, C090-C091, C098-C099, C100, C102-C104, C108-C109 (8000-8700, 9700-9701)

C111 and Schema Discriminator 1: Nasopharynx/PharyngealTonsil: 2 (8000-8700, 9700-9701)

C019, C024, C051-C052, C090-C091, C098-C099, C100, C102-C104, C108-C109, C111
C019 Base of tongue, NOS
C024 Lingual tonsil
C051 Soft palate, NOS
C052 Uvula
C090 Tonsillar fossa
C091 Tonsillar pillar
C098 Overlapping lesion of tonsil
C099 Tonsil, NOS
C100 Vallecula
C102 Lateral wall of oropharynx
C103 Posterior wall of oropharynx
C104 Branchial cleft (site of neoplasm)
C108 Overlapping lesion of oropharynx
C109 Oropharynx, NOS
C111 Pharyngeal tonsil

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma
Note 3: The intrinsic muscles of tongue are four paired muscles within the tongue which control its shape. The extrinsic muscles originate from structures outside the tongue and control its positioning.

Note 4: Parapharyngeal involvement (pharyngeal space invasion) (code 7) denotes posterolateral infiltration of tumor beyond the pharyngobasilar fascia. The pharyngobasilar fascia is the fibrous layer of the pharyngeal wall between the mucosa and the muscular layer, attached superiorly to the basilar part of the occipital bone and diminishing in thickness as it descends.

Note 5: The masticator space (code 7) primarily consists of the muscles of mastication, the medial and lateral pterygoid, masseter, and temporals muscles. The space also includes the ramus of the mandible and the third division of cranial nerve V as it passes through the foramen ovale into the suprahoyd neck.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- All sites
  - Confined to site of origin
  - Epiglottis, lingual surface
- Oropharynx (C090-C091, C098-C099, C100, C102-C104, C108-C109)
  - Tonsil (palatine, NOS)
  - Tonsillar pillar/fossa
  - Wall (anterior [including vallecular], lateral, posterior)
- Pharyngeal Tonsil (C111)
  - Adenoid
  - Nasopharynx (inferior wall, superior surface of soft palate)
  - Pharyngeal tonsil (nasopharyngeal tonsil)
  - Posterior superior wall (vault)
- Soft Palate (C051, C052)
  - Lamina propria, submucosa, musculature
  - Tumor crosses midline
- Tongue Base (C019, C024)
  - Lamina propria, submucosa, musculature (intrinsic)
  - Tumor crosses midline

2 Regional by direct extension only

- All sites
  - Epiglottis, lingual surface plus both lateral walls through soft palate or base of tongue
  - Epiglottis WITH fixation
• Oropharynx (C090-C091, C098-C099, C100, C102-C104, C108-C109)
  o Base of tongue (including lingual tonsil)
  o Buccal mucosa
  o Floor of mouth
  o Gum (gingiva)
  o Hypopharynx
  o Larynx, NOS
  o Lateral walls (both) through soft palate or base of tongue
  o Posterior surface of epiglottis
  o Prevertebral fascia/muscle
  o Pyriform sinus
  o Soft palate (inferior surface including uvula, superior [nasopharyngeal] surface, NOS)
  o Soft tissue of neck
• Pharyngeal Tonsil (C111)
  o Hard palate
  o Mandible
  o Nasal cavity
  o Oropharynx
  o Paranasal sinuses
  o Pterygopalatine fossa
  o Soft palate, inferior surface including uvula
• Soft Palate (C051, C052)
  o Buccal mucosa (inner cheek)
  o Gum (gingiva), upper
  o Hard palate
  o Lateral pharyngeal wall
  o Mandible
  o Tonsils, including tonsillar pillars and fossae
• Tongue Base (posterior 1/3 of tongue) (C019, C024)
  o Anterior two-thirds of tongue for base of tongue
  o Base of tongue tumor crosses midline
  o Floor of mouth
  o Glossoepiglottic fold
  o Glossofaryngeal sulcus
  o Lateral pharyngeal wall
  o Lingual tonsil for base of tongue
  o Lower gingiva
  o Pharyngoepiglottic fold
  o Soft palate, inferior surface or NOS including uvula
  o Sublingual gland
  o Tonsil, tonsillar pillars and fossae
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  - Laterotracheal
  - Paralaryngeal
  - Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Perithyroidal
  - Precricoid (Delphian)
  - Prelaryngeal
  - Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Recurrent laryngeal
- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s), see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial
    - Buccinator (buccal)
    - Mandibular
    - Nasolabial
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid
    - Infraauricular
    - Intraparotid
    - Periparotid
- Preauricular
  - Retroauricular (mastoid)
  - Retropharyngeal
  - Suboccipital
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - All sites
    - Carotid artery (encasing)
    - Deep/extrinsic muscles of tongue
      - Genioglossus
      - Hyoglossus
      - Palatoglossus
      - Styloglossus
    - Lateral nasopharynx
    - Masseter muscle
    - Masticator space
      - Cranial nerve V-third division
      - Muscles of mastication
      - Pterygoid muscle (lateral, medial)
      - Ramus of mandible
      - Temporalis muscles
    - Parapharyngeal extension (pharyngeal space invasion)
    - Pterygoid plates
    - Skull (base, bone, NOS)
  - Oropharynx (C090-C091, C098-C099, C100, C102-C104, C108-C109)
    - Anterior 2/3 of tongue
    - Hard palate
    - Mandible
    - Parotid gland
  - Pharyngeal Tonsil (C111)
    - Brain
    - Cranial nerve involvement
    - Hypopharynx
    - Infratemporal fossa/masticator space
    - Orbit (floor, NOS)
    - Paranasal sinus
- Soft tissues of neck
  - Soft palate (C051, C052)
    - Hypopharynx
    - Maxilla
    - Maxillary sinus (antrum)
    - Nasal cavity
    - Nasopharynx (lateral, NOS)
    - Palatine bone (bone of hard palate)
    - Tongue
  - Tongue Base (posterior 1/3 of tongue) (C019, C024)
    - Hard palate
    - Hypopharynx
    - Larynx
    - Mandible
    - Skin
- Distant lymph node(s)
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s), Level VII)
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant mets WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
HYOPHARYNX

8000-8700, 9700-9701

C129-C132, C138-C139
C129 Pyriform sinus
C130 Postcricoid region
C131 Hypopharyngeal aspect of aryepiglottic fold
C132 Posterior wall of hypopharynx
C138 Overlapping lesion of hypopharynx
C139 Hypopharynx, NOS (laryngopharynx)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma"

Note 3: Code 2 If there is fixation of hemilarynx or larynx.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to hypopharynx
- Laryngopharynx
- Postcricoid area
- Posterior pharyngeal wall
- Pyriform fossa or sinus
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Carotid artery (encased)
- Central compartment soft tissues of neck including
  - Prelaryngeal strap muscle(s)
  - Subcutaneous fat
- Cricoid cartilage
- Esophagus
- Extrinsic muscle of tongue
- Fixation of structures in code 1 (localized with fixation)
- Fixation of hemilarynx, larynx or oropharynx
- Hard palate
- Hemilarynx
- Mandible
- Medial pterygoid
- Oropharynx
- Prevertebral fascia/muscle(s)
- Soft tissues of neck
- Thyroid cartilage/gland

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  - Laterotracheal
  - Paralaryngeal
  - Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Perithyroidal
  - Precricoid (Delphian)
  - Prelaryngeal
- Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
- Recurrent laryngeal
- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial
    - Buccinator (buccal)
    - Mandibular
    - Nasolabial
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid
    - Infraauricular
    - Intraparotid
    - Periparotid
    - Preauricular
  - Retroauricular (mastoid)
  - Retropharyngeal
  - Suboccipital
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved
  - Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved
  - Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
    - Base of tongue
    - Floor of tongue
    - Hyoid bone
    - Mediastinal structure(s)
    - Nasopharynx
  - Distant lymph node(s), NOS
    - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s))
  - Distant metastasis, NOS
    - Carcinomatosis
    - Distant mets WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
PHARYNX OTHER

8000-8700, 9700-9701

C140, C142, C148
C140 Pharynx, NOS
C142 Waldeyer ring
C148 Overlapping lesion of lip, oral cavity

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Invasive tumor confined to site of origin

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Extension to adjacent structure(s)
- Fixation
- More than one region of pharynx involved
  - Hypopharynx
  - Nasopharynx
  - Oropharynx
- Pharynx and oral cavity involved
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  - Laterotracheal
  - Paralaryngeal
  - Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Perithyroidal
  - Precricoid (Delphian)
  - Prelaryngeal
  - Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Recurrent laryngeal
- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial
    - Buccinator (buccal)
    - Mandibular
    - Nasolabial
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid
    - Infraauricular
    - Intraparotid
    - Periparotid
- Preauricular
  - Retroauricular (mastoid)
  - Retropharyngeal
  - Suboccipital
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved
- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved
- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Meninges
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s))
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
MIDDLE EAR

8000-8700, 9700-9701

C301
C301 Middle ear

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to
  - Auditory bone(s) (incus, malleus, stapes)
  - Vestibulocochlear organ
    - Cochlea
    - Semicircular ducts (ampullae, saccule, utricle)
    - Septum
    - Tympanic membrane (ear drum)

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent connective tissue
  - Auditory tube (Eustachian tube, pharyngotympanic tube)
  - Nerve(s)
- Adjacent organ(s)/structure(s)
o External auditory meatus (ear canal)
o Internal carotid artery
o Mastoid antrum
o Nasopharynx
o Temporal bone

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  - Laterotracheal
  - Paralaryngeal
  - Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Perithyroidal
  - Precricoid (Delphian)
  - Prelaryngeal
  - Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Recurrent laryngeal
- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial
    - Buccinator (buccal)
    - Mandibular
- Nasolabial
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid
    - Infraauricular
    - Intraparotid
    - Periparotid
    - Preauricular
  - Retroauricular (mastoid)
  - Retropharyngeal
  - Suboccipital
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Meninges
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s))
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
NASAL CAVITY AND PARANASAL SINUSES

8000-8700, 8941, 8982, 9700-9701

C300, C310-C311
C300 Nasal cavity (excluding nose, NOS C760)
C310 Maxillary sinus
C311 Ethmoid sinus

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940, 8950-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: The bones of the lateral wall of the nasal cavity include the maxilla, the perpendicular plate of the palatine bone, the medial pterygoid plate, the labyrinth and inferior concha of the ethmoid. The roof of the nasal cavity is formed by the nasal bone. The floor of the nasal cavity, which forms the roof of the mouth, is composed of the bones of the hard palate: the horizontal plate of the palatine bone posteriorly and the palatine process of the maxilla anteriorly.

Note 4: Involvement of or extension to bone includes any type of tumor extension to the bone, such as erosion, invasion, extension, penetration, or destruction.

Note 5: "Bony invasion" does not include extension to palate, cribriform plate, or pterygoid plates. Extension to these structures is coded separately.

Note 6: “Bony invasion” does include involvement of perpendicular plate of ethmoid bone or ethmoid air cells.

Note 7: Code 2 for base of skull, NOS when there is no information available for more specific bony structures in the skull.
Note 8: Minimal extension to anterior cranial fossa implies tumor pushing through the cribriform plate, but without invasion of the dura or brain.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Nasal Cavity (C300)
  - Confined to nasal cavity, NOS
  - Invasive tumor confined to one or more of the following subsites WITHOUT bony invasion
    - Floor
    - Lateral wall, including
    - Meatus (superior, middle, inferior)
    - Nasal conchae (superior, middle, inferior)
      - Septum
      - Vestibule (edge of naris to mucocutaneous junction)
- Maxillary Sinus (C310)
  - Confined to maxillary sinus, NOS
  - Confined to mucosa of maxillary sinus (antrum)
    - WITHOUT erosion or destruction of bone
- Ethmoid Sinus (C311)
  - Confined to ethmoid sinus
    - WITH or WITHOUT bony invasion (involvement of perpendicular plate of ethmoid bone or ethmoid air cells)

2 Regional by direct extension only

- All sites
  - Adjacent organs/structures, NOS
  - Base of skull, NOS
  - Nasopharynx
  - Pterygoid plates
- Nasal Cavity (C300)
  - Confined to one or more subsites listed in code 1 WITH bony invasion
    - Choana
    - Cribriform plate
    - Ethmoid sinus
    - Frontal sinus
    - Hard palate
    - Nasolacrimal duct
    - Palatine bone
- Maxillary sinus (C310)
- Bone erosion or destruction
- Ethmoid sinuses (anterior, posterior, NOS)
- Floor or medial wall of orbit
- Floor or posterior wall of maxillary sinus
- Frontal sinus
- Hard palate
- Infratemporal fossa
- Maxilla, NOS
- Middle nasal meatus
- Nasal cavity (floor, lateral wall, septum, turbinates)
- Orbital contents including eye
- Palatine bone
- Pterygoid fossa
- Pterygomaxillary fossa
- Soft palate
- Subcutaneous tissues
- Temporal fossa

- Ethmoid Sinus (C311)
  - Confined to both ethmoid sinuses
    - WITH or WITHOUT bony invasion (involvement of perpendicular plate of ethmoid bone or ethmoid air cells)
  - Anterior cranial fossa (minimal extension)
  - Anterior orbital contents
  - Brain
  - Clivus
  - Cranial nerves (other than V2, maxillary division of trigeminal nerve)
  - Cribriform plate
  - Dura
  - Frontal sinus
  - Maxillary sinus
  - Medial wall or floor of orbit
  - Middle cranial fossa
  - Nasal cavity WITH or WITHOUT bony invasion, one or more subsites
    - Floor
    - Lateral wall
      - Meatus (superior, middle, inferior)
      - Nasal conchae (superior, middle, inferior)
    - Septum
      - Turbinates
        - Vestibule (edge of naris to mucocutaneous junction)
  - Orbital apex
  - Orbital plate
  - Skin of cheek
  - Skin of nose
  - Sphenoid sinus
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  - Laterotracheal
  - Paralaryngeal
  - Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Perithyroidal
  - Precricoid (Delphian)
  - Prelaryngeal
  - Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Recurrent laryngeal
- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s), see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial
    - Buccinator (buccal)
    - Mandibular
    - Nasolabial
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid
    - Infraauricular
    - Intraparotid
    - Periparotid
• Preauricular
  o Retroauricular (mastoid)
  o Retropharyngeal
  o Suboccipital
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s)

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

• Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  o Nasal Cavity (C300)
    ▪ Anterior cranial fossa (minimal extension)
    ▪ Anterior orbital contents
    ▪ Brain
    ▪ Clivus
    ▪ Cranial nerves (other than V2, maxillary division of trigeminal nerve)
    ▪ Dura
    ▪ Maxillary sinus
    ▪ Medial wall or floor of orbit
    ▪ Middle cranial fossa
    ▪ Orbital apex
    ▪ Orbital plate
    ▪ Skin of cheek
    ▪ Skin of nose
    ▪ Sphenoid sinus
  o Ethmoid Sinus (C311)
    ▪ Hard palate
• Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  o Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s), Level VII)
• Distant metastasis, NOS
  o Carcinomatosis
  o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
SINUS OTHER

8000-8700, 9700-9701

C312-C313, C318-C319
C312 Frontal sinus
C313 Sphenoid sinus
C318 Overlapping lesion of accessory sinuses
C319 Accessory sinus, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to mucosa of one of the following
  - Frontal sinus
  - Sphenoid sinus

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Accessory sinuses invaded (more than one)
  - Destruction of bony wall of sinus
- Bone, cartilage
  - Facial bones
  - Maxilla
• Orbital structures
  • Pterygoid fossa
  • Zygoma
• Brain
• Cranial nerves
• Hard palate
• Muscles
  • Masseter
  • Pterygoid
• Nasal cavity
  • Floor
  • Lateral wall
  • Nasal cavity, NOS
  • Septum
  • Turbinates
• Nasopharynx
• Orbital contents, including eye
• Soft tissue
• Skin

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

• Level I
  • Level IA - Submental
  • Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
• Level II - Upper jugular
  • Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  • Upper deep cervical
  • Level IIA - Anterior
  • Level IIB - Posterior
• Level III - Middle jugular
  • Middle deep cervical
• Level IV - Lower jugular
  • Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  • Lower deep cervical
  • Virchow node
• Level V - Posterior triangle group
  • Posterior cervical
  • Level VA - Spinal accessory
  • Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
• Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  • Laterotracheal
  • Paralaryngeal
  • Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  • Perithyroidal
- Precricoid (Delphian)
- Prelaryngeal
- Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
- Recurrent laryngeal
- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial
    - Buccinator (buccal)
    - Mandibular
    - Nasolabial
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid
    - Infraauricular
    - Intraparotid
    - Periparotid
    - Preauricular
  - Retroauricular (mastoid)
  - Retropharyngeal
  - Suboccipital
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

**4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved**

- Codes (2) + (3)

**7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved**

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Meninges
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s))
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

**9 Unknown if extension or metastasis**
LARYNX SUPRAGLOTTIC

8000-8700, 9700-9701

C101, C321
C101 Epiglottis anterior
C321 Supraglottis

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Impaired vocal cord mobility, also described as vocal cord paresis, may suggest invasion of intrinsic laryngeal muscle. Fixation of the vocal cord may be described as immobility of the arytenoids noted on endoscopy, vocal cord paralysis, or deviation of larynx to fixed side.

Note 4: Code 1 for localized tumor only if no information is available to identify further extension.

Note 5: Tumor limited to the larynx (code 1) includes tumor involving, but limited to, the supraglottis, glottis and subglottis

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to
  - Epiglottis, NOS
  - One supraglottis subsite with normal vocal cord mobility
Supraglottis, NOS
- Limited to larynx with vocal cord fixation
- Mucosa of more than one subsite of supraglottis and/or glottis

Supraglottis
- Aryepiglottic fold
- Cartilage (arytenoid, corniculate, cuneiform, laryngeal, NOS)
- Epiglottis (infrahyoid, laryngeal [posterior] surface of epiglottis)
- Epiglottis (suprahypoid) (including tip, lingual (anterior) and laryngeal surfaces)
- Epilarynx, NOS
- False cords: ventricular bands/cavity/vestibular fold

2 Regional by direct extension only

- All sites
  - Cricoid cartilage
  - Hypopharynx, NOS
  - Mucosa of
    - Base of tongue
    - Pyriform sinus (medial wall)
    - Vallecula
  - Paraglottic space
  - Postcricoid area
  - Pre-epiglottic space
  - Pre-epiglottic tissues
  - Vocal cord fixation of larynx with extension to structures listed in code 2
- Epiglottis (anterior surface, NOS) primaries only
  - Buccal mucosa
  - Floor of mouth
  - Gum (gingiva)
  - Nasopharynx
  - Pterygoid muscle
  - Soft palate

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
- Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  - Laterotracheal
  - Paralaryngeal
  - Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Perithyroidal
  - Precricoid (Delphian)
  - Prelaryngeal
  - Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Recurrent laryngeal
- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial
    - Buccinator (buccal)
    - Mandibular
    - Nasolabial
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid
    - Infraauricular
    - Intraparotid
    - Periparotid
    - Preauricular
  - Retroauricular (mastoid)
  - Retropharyngeal
  - Suboccipital
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Anterior 2/3 of tongue
  - Bone
  - Carotid artery (encased)
  - Esophagus
  - Extrinsic muscle(s) of tongue
    - Genioglossus
    - Geniohyoid
    - Hyoglossus
    - Mylohyoid
    - Palatoglossus
    - Styloglossus
  - Mandible
  - Mediastinal structure(s)
  - Oropharynx, NOS
  - Parotid gland
  - Prevertebral space
  - Skin
  - Soft tissues of neck
  - Strap muscle(s)
    - Omohyoid
    - Sternohyoid
    - Sternothyroid
    - Thyrohyoid
  - Thyroid cartilage (inner cortex, outer cortex, NOS)
  - Thyroid gland
  - Trachea
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s), Level VII)
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
LARYNX GLOTTIC

8000-8700, 9700-9701

C320
C320 Glottis

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Impaired vocal cord mobility, also described as vocal cord paresis, may suggest invasion of intrinsic laryngeal muscle. Fixation of the vocal cord may be described as immobility of the arytenoids noted on endoscopy, vocal cord paralysis, or deviation of larynx to fixed side.

Note 4: Code 1 for localized tumor only if no information is available to identify further extension.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to glottis, NOS
- Limited to larynx WITH or WITHOUT vocal cord fixation
  - Intrinsic larynx
  - Laryngeal commissure(s) (anterior, posterior)
  - One or both vocal cord(s) involved WITH or WITHOUT normal vocal cord mobility
  - Vocal cord(s) (true cord(s), true vocal cord(s), NOS)
Adjacent region(s) of larynx involved
  o Intrinsic muscle(s) of larynx
    ▪ Aryepiglottic
    ▪ Arytenoid
    ▪ Cricoarytenoid
    ▪ Cricothyroid
    ▪ Thyroarytenoid
    ▪ Thyroepiglottic
    ▪ Vocalis
  o Subglottis
  o Supraglottis
    ▪ Aryepiglottic fold
    ▪ Arytenoid cartilage
    ▪ Corniculate tubercle
    ▪ Cuneiform tubercle
  o Ventricular bands (false vocal cord(s))

2 Regional by direct extension only

  o Base of tongue
  o Hypopharynx, NOS
  o Paraglottic space
  o Postericoid area
  o Pre-epiglottic space
  o Pre-epiglottic tissues
  o Pyriform sinus (pyriform fossa)
  o Thyroid cartilage (inner cortex)
  o Vallecula

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

  o Level I
    ▪ Level IA - Submental
    ▪ Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
  o Level II - Upper jugular
    ▪ Jugulodigastric (subdiagnostic)
    ▪ Upper deep cervical
    ▪ Level IIA - Anterior
    ▪ Level IIB - Posterior
  o Level III - Middle jugular
    ▪ Middle deep cervical
  o Level IV - Lower jugular
    ▪ Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
    ▪ Lower deep cervical
- Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  - Laterotracheal
  - Paralaryngeal
  - Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Perithyroidal
  - Precricoid (Delphian)
  - Prelaryngeal
  - Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Recurrent laryngeal
- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial
    - Buccinator (buccal)
    - Mandibular
    - Nasolabial
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid
    - Infraauricular
    - Intraparotid
    - Periparotid
    - Preauricular
  - Retroauricular (mastoid)
  - Retropharyngeal
  - Suboccipital
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved
- Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Carotid artery (encased)
  - Cricoid cartilage
  - Esophagus
  - Extrinsic muscle(s) of tongue
    - Genioglossus
    - Geniohyoid
    - Hyoglossus
    - Mylohyoid
    - Palatoglossus
    - Styloglossus
  - Mediastinal structure(s)
  - Oropharynx, NOS
  - Prevertebral space
  - Skin
  - Soft tissues of neck
  - Strap muscle(s)
    - Omohyoid
    - Sternohyoid
    - Sternothyroid
    - Thyrohyoid
  - Thyroid cartilage (outer cortex, NOS)
  - Thyroid gland
  - Trachea
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s), Level VII)
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
LARYNX SUBGLOTTIC

8000-8700, 9700-9701

C322
C322 Subglottis

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Impaired vocal cord mobility, also described as vocal cord paresis, may suggest invasion of intrinsic laryngeal muscle. Fixation of the vocal cord may be described as immobility of the arytenoids noted on endoscopy, vocal cord paralysis, or deviation of larynx to fixed side.

Note 4: Code 1 for localized tumor only if no information is available to identify further extension.

Note 5: Tumor limited to the larynx (code 1) includes tumor involving, but limited to, the supraglottis, glottis and subglottis.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to subglottis
- Inner cortex of the thyroid cartilage
- Involvement adjacent regions(s) of larynx WITH normal or impaired mobility
  - Glottis
• Supraglottis
  • Limited to larynx with vocal cord fixation
  • Paraglottic space

2 Regional by direct extension only

• Base of tongue
• Hypopharynx, NOS
• Posterior area
• Pre-epiglottic tissues
• Pyriform sinus (pyriform fossa)
• Valleculla

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

• Level I
  o Level IA - Submental
  o Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
• Level II - Upper jugular
  o Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  o Upper deep cervical
  o Level IIA - Anterior
  o Level IIB - Posterior
• Level III - Middle jugular
  o Middle deep cervical
• Level IV - Lower jugular
  o Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  o Lower deep cervical
  o Virchow node
• Level V - Posterior triangle group
  o Posterior cervical
  o Level VA - Spinal accessory
  o Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
• Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  o Laterotracheal
  o Paralaryngeal
  o Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  o Perithyroidal
  o Precriocid (Delphian)
  o Prelaryngeal
  o Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  o Recurrent laryngeal
• Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  o Esophageal groove
- Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch

- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial
    - Buccinator (buccal)
    - Mandibular
    - Nasolabial
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid
    - Infraauricular
    - Intraparotid
    - Periparotid
    - Preauricular
  - Retroauricular (mastoid)
  - Retropharyngeal
  - Suboccipital

- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Carotid artery
  - Cricoid cartilage or thyroid cartilage
  - Esophagus
  - Extrinsic muscles of tongue
    - Genioglossus
    - Geniohyoid
    - Hyoglossus
    - Mylohyoid
    - Palatoglossus
    - Styloglossus
  - Mediastinal structure(s)
  - Oropharynx
  - Prevertebral space
  - Skin
  - Soft tissues of neck
o Strap muscle(s)
  ▪ Omohyoid
  ▪ Sternohyoid
  ▪ Sternothyroid
  ▪ Thyrohyoid
  o Thyroid gland
  o Trachea
• Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  o Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s))
• Distant metastasis, NOS
  o Carcinomatosis
  o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
LARYNX OTHER

8000-8700, 9700-9701

C323, C328-C329
C323 Laryngeal cartilage
C328 Overlapping lesion of larynx
C329 Larynx, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Head and Neck
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Impaired vocal cord mobility, also described as vocal cord paresis, may suggest invasion of intrinsic laryngeal muscle. Fixation of the vocal cord may be described as immobility of the arytenoids noted on endoscopy, vocal cord paralysis, or deviation of larynx to fixed side.

Note 4: Code 1 for localized tumor only if no information is available to identify further extension.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to larynx, NOS
- Involvement adjacent regions(s) of larynx WITH normal or impaired mobility
  - Glottis
  - Supraglottis
- Limited to larynx with vocal cord fixation
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Base of tongue
- Hypopharynx, NOS
- Paraglottic space
- Postcricoid area
- Pre-epiglottic tissues
- Pyriform sinus (pyriform fossa)
- Thyroid cartilage (inner cortex)
- Vallecula

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  - Laterotracheal
  - Paralaryngeal
  - Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Perithyroidal
  - Precricoid (Delphian)
  - Prelaryngeal
  - Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Recurrent laryngeal
- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Other groups
- Cervical, NOS
- Deep cervical, NOS
- Facial
  - Buccinator (buccal)
  - Mandibular
  - Nasolabial
- Internal jugular, NOS
- Parapharyngeal
- Parotid
  - Infraauricular
  - Intraparotid
  - Periparotid
  - Preauricular
- Retroauricular (mastoid)
- Retropharyngeal
- Suboccipital
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved
- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved
- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Carotid artery (encased)
  - Cricoid cartilage
  - Esophagus
  - Extrinsic muscle(s) of tongue
    - Genioglossus
    - Geniohyoid
    - Hyoglossus
    - Mylohyoid
    - Palatoglossus
    - Styloglossus
  - Mediastinal structure(s)
  - Oropharynx
  - Prevertebral space
  - Skin
  - Soft tissues of neck
  - Strap muscle(s)
    - Omohyoid
    - Sternohyoid
- Sternothyroid
- Thyrohyoid
  - Thyroid cartilage (outer cortex, NOS)
  - Thyroid gland
  - Trachea
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s))
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
MELANOMA HEAD AND NECK (8720-8790)

8720-8790 (C003-C005, C008-C069, C090-C148, C300-C329)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: Mucosal melanomas occur throughout the mucosa of the lip and oral cavity (C003-C005, C008-C069, C090-C148) and the nasal cavity and middle ear (C300-C301), accessory sinuses (C310-C319) and the larynx (C320-C329). For a more detailed description of anatomy, refer to the appropriate Summary Stage 2018 chapter based on the location of the mucosal melanoma.

Note 3: Code 1 for localized tumors when no other information is available or for extension involving the mucosa only of adjacent sites.

Note 4: Extension involving the deeper tissues of the primary or adjacent sites are either regional or distant, depending on the involvement.

- Code 2 for regional when the only information available is “deep tissue involvement.”

Note 5: The description of lymph nodes has been standardized across the head and neck chapters. Levels I-VII and the “other” lymph nodes are regional (code 3).

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to site of origin, NOS
- Mucosa WITH or WITHOUT soft tissue (immediately underlying)
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Deep soft tissue involvement
- Moderately advanced disease, NOS
- Overlying skin

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  - Laterotracheal
  - Paralaryngeal
  - Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Perithyroidal
  - Precricoid (Delphian)
  - Prelaryngeal
  - Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Recurrent laryngeal
- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial
    - Buccinator (buccal)
    - Mandibular
• Nasolabial
  o Internal jugular, NOS
  o Parapharyngeal
  o Parotid
    • Infraauricular
    • Intraparotid
    • Periparotid
    • Preauricular
  o Retroauricular (mastoid)
  o Retropharyngeal
  o Suboccipital
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

• Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  o Bone
  o Brain
  o Cartilage
  o Carotid artery
  o Deep extrinsic muscle of tongue
    • Genioglossus
    • Hyoglossus
    • Palatoglossus
    • Styloglossus
  o Dura
  o Lower cranial nerves (IX, X, XI, XII)
  o Masticator space
  o Mediastinal structures
  o Prevertebral space
  o Skull base
  o Very advanced disease, NOS
• Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  o Mediastinal (excluding superior mediastinal node(s))
• Distant metastasis, NOS
  o Carcinomatosis
  o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
DIGESTIVE AND HEPATOBILIARY SYSTEMS

DIGESTIVE SYSTEM SITES

Below is information about the subsites of the colon

• The **ascending colon**, measuring 15 to 20 cm, begins with the **cecum**, a 6 to 9 cm pouch that arises at the proximal segment of the right colon at the end of the terminal ileum. It is covered with a visceral peritoneum (serosa) and measures 15 to 20 cm. The ascending colon ends at the **hepatic flexure**, which transitions the ascending colon into the **transverse colon**, passing just inferior to the liver and anterior to the duodenum.

• The **transverse colon**, measuring 18 to 22 cm long, is completely intraperitoneal and supported on a mesentery that is attached to the pancreas. Anteriorly the serosa is continuous with the gastrocolic ligament. The transverse colon ends at the **splenic flexure**, which transitions into the **descending colon**.

• The **descending colon**, measuring 10 to 15 cm long, passes interiorly to the spleen and anterior to the tail of the pancreas. The posterior aspect lacks serosa and is in direct contact with the retroperitoneum.

• The **sigmoid colon**, measuring 15 to 20 cm long, is completely intraperitoneal with a mesentery that develops at the medial border of the left psoas major muscle and extends to the **rectum**. The transition from the sigmoid colon to the rectum is marked by the fusion of the taenia of the sigmoid colon to the circumferential muscle of the rectum.

• The **rectum**, measuring 12 to 16 cm, is covered by peritoneum in front and on both sides.

### TABLE OF ANATOMIC STRUCTURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRIMARY SITE</th>
<th>ICD-O</th>
<th>MUCOSA:</th>
<th>SUB-MUCOSA</th>
<th>MUSCULARIS</th>
<th>SUB-SEROSAL TISSUE</th>
<th>SUB-SEROSA</th>
<th>OUTSIDE THE SEROSA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESOPHAGUS</td>
<td>C15_</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>See note 4</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>See note 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STOMACH</td>
<td>C16_</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Greater and lesser omentum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMALL INTESTINE</td>
<td>C17_</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Mesentery of small intestine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLON</td>
<td>C18_</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CECUM</td>
<td>C180</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX</td>
<td>C181</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASCENDING</td>
<td>C182</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>See note 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEPATIC FLEXURE</td>
<td>C183</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Mesenteric or pericolic fat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANSVERSE</td>
<td>C184</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPLENIC FLEXURE</td>
<td>C185</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DESCENDING</td>
<td>C186</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>See note 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGMOID</td>
<td>C187</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OVERLAPPING</td>
<td>C188</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLON, NOS</td>
<td>C189</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECTO-SIGMOID</td>
<td>C199</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Mesenteric or pericolic perirectal fat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECTUM</td>
<td>C209</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>See note 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Subserosal tissues include fat and flesh between the muscularis and the serosa.
2. Serosa is also called mesothelium and visceral peritoneum. For the stomach and small intestine, serosa is also referred to as tunica serosa. The term “serosa” is sometimes generically used to include both the serosa and the subserosa, and therefore, the clinician should be consulted to determine if the use of “serosa” includes the subserosa also.
3. Mesenteric fat is also called pericolic fat.
4. The tissue outside the muscularis of the esophagus is composed of fibrous connective tissue and referred to as adventitia.
5. Anterior and/or medial aspects, but not lateral.
6. Referred to as perirectal tissue.
DISTINGUISHING “IN SITU” AND “LOCALIZED” TUMORS FOR THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

1. Historically, carcinomas described as “confined to mucosa” have been assigned 1 (localized). In order to provide greater specificity and to rule out the possibility of classifying noninvasive tumors in this category, abstractors should determine
   a. If the tumor is confined to the epithelium, in which case it is in situ, OR
   b. If the tumor has penetrated the basement membrane to invade the lamina propria, in which case it is localized and assigned Summary Stage 1 (localized) for invasion of the lamina propria

   Exception: Code 0 (behavior code 2) includes cancer cells confined within the glandular basement membrane (intraepithelial); includes in situ plus intramucosal carcinoma (involvement of the lamina propria and may involve but not penetrate through the muscularis mucosa) (penetration through the muscularis mucosa is behavior code 3.)

2. The layers of the digestive tract consist of
   a. The EPITHELIAL LAYER borders on the lumen. It contains no blood vessels or lymphatics
   b. The BASEMENT MEMBRANE, a sheet of extracellular material, functions as a filtration barrier and a boundary involved in generating and maintaining tissue structure
   c. The LAMINA PROPRIA, composed of areolar connective tissue, contains blood vessels, nerves, and, in some regions, glands. Once tumor has broken through the basement membrane into the lamina propria, it can spread by way of the lymphatics and blood vessels to other parts of the body
   d. The MUSCULARIS MUCOSAE is a thin layer of smooth muscle fibers. It is found in the wall of the digestive tract from the esophagus to the anal canal
   e. The SUBMUCOSA is a thick layer of either dense or areolar connective tissue. It contains blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, nerves, and, in some regions, glands
   f. The MUSCULARIS PROPRIA is a double layer of muscle tissue in most of the digestive tract; it constitutes the wall of the organ.
   g. The SEROSA, the outermost layer covering most of the digestive tract, is a single layer of squamous epithelial cells, part of the visceral peritoneum.
   h. The SUBSEROSA is inside the serosa (mesothelium), and sometimes part of the serosa. The serosa and subserosa are present only in the peritonealized portions of the digestive tract.
      i. For the esophagus and in the rectum below the peritoneal reflection, there is no serosa
      ii. For the esophagus, the connective tissue of surrounding structures merges with the connective tissue of the esophagus and is called ADVENTITIA.
ESOPHAGUS

C150-C155, C158-C159 (8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701)


C150-C155, C158-C160
C150 Cervical esophagus
C151 Thoracic esophagus
C152 Abdominal esophagus
C153 Upper third of esophagus
C154 Middle third of esophagus
C155 Lower third of esophagus
C158 Overlapping lesion of esophagus
C159 Esophagus, NOS
C160 Cardia, esophagogastric junction (EGJ)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Cancers involving the EGJ that have their epicenter within the proximal 2 cm of the cardia (Siewert types I/II) are to be staged as esophageal cancers (see the Esophagus (excluding GIST) chapter). Cancers whose epicenter is more than 2 cm distal from the EGJ, even if the EGJ is involved, will be staged using the stomach cancer chapter.

- The Schema Discriminator EsophagusGEJunction (EGJ)/Stomach is used to discriminate between EsophagusGEJunction and Stomach which are coded to ICD-O-3 code C160
Note 4: Non-invasive carcinomas in the esophagus formerly called in situ are now called high grade dysplasia. High grade dysplasia and severe dysplasia are generally not reportable in cancer registries.

- Code 0 if your registry collects these tumors

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, non-invasive; high-grade dysplasia

- (Adeno)carcinoma, noninvasive, in a polyp

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to esophagus, NOS
- Extension through wall, NOS
- Invasion of
  - Intramucosa, NOS
  - Lamina propria
  - Mucosa, NOS
  - Muscularis mucosae
  - Muscularis, NOS
  - Muscularis propria
  - Submucosa (superficial invasion)
- Perimucosal tissue invaded
- Subserosal tissue/(sub)serosal fat invaded

2 Regional by direct extension only

- All sites
  - Adjacent structure(s), NOS
  - Adventitia and/or soft tissue invaded
  - Aorta
  - Azygos vein
  - Diaphragm (excluding abdominal/lower esophagus, see code 7)
  - Esophagus is described as "FIXED"
  - Extension to adjacent (connective) tissue WITHOUT perforation of visceral peritoneum covering these structures
  - Gastric artery
  - Ligaments
    - Gastrocolic
    - Gastrohepatic
    - Gastroplenic
    - Omentum (greater, lesser, NOS)
- Mesothelium
- Pericardium (excluding thoracic/middle esophagus, see code 7)
- Perigastric fat
- Peritoneum, NOS
- Pleura (excluding cervical/upper esophagus, see code 7)
- Serosa (invasion of/or through)
- Tunica serosa
- Vertebral body
- Visceral peritoneum (including perforation)

- Cervical esophagus
  - Blood vessel(s)
    - Carotid artery
    - Subclavian artery
  - Carina
  - Cervical vertebra(e)
  - Hypopharynx
  - Jugular vein
  - Larynx
  - Thyroid
  - Trachea

- Intrathoracic, upper or mid-portion, esophagus
  - Blood vessel(s), major
    - Gastric artery/vein
    - Pulmonary artery/vein
    - Vena cava
  - Carina
  - Stomach, cardia (via serosa)
  - Trachea

- Intrathoracic, lower portion (abdominal), esophagus
  - Blood vessel(s)
    - Vena cava

- Intrathoracic esophagus (all portions)
  - Adjacent rib(s)
  - Lung via bronchus
  - Mediastinal structure(s), NOS
  - Thoracic vertebra(e)

- Esophagus GE Junction
  - Liver
  - Pancreas
  - Small intestine (duodenum [via serosa], ileum, jejunum)
  - Spleen
  - Transverse colon (including flexures)
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- All subsites
  - Nodule(s) in perigastric fat
  - Peri-/paraesophageal (8L, 8M) (excluding GE junction)
  - Regional lymph node(s), NOS
    - Lymph node(s), NOS
- Cervical esophagus only
  - Cervical, NOS
    - Anterior deep cervical (laterotracheal) (recurrent laryngeal)
    - Deep cervical, NOS
    - Internal jugular, NOS
      - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
      - Upper, NOS
  - Scalene (inferior deep cervical) (1)
  - Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) (1)
- Intrathoracic esophagus, upper or middle, only
  - Internal jugular, NOS
    - Deep cervical, NOS
      - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
      - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
      - Lower, NOS
      - Middle
      - Upper cervical, NOS
  - Intrabronchial
    - Carinal (tracheobronchial) (10R, 10L) (tracheal bifurcation)
    - Hilar (bronchopulmonary) (proximal lobar) (pulmonary root)
    - Left gastric (superior gastric) (17)
      - Cardiac (cardial)
      - Lesser curvature
      - Perigastric, NOS
    - Peritracheal
      - Posterior mediastinal (tracheoesophageal)
  - Superior mediastinal
- Intrathoracic esophagus, lower (abdominal) only
  - Left gastric (superior gastric) (17)
    - Cardiac (cardial)
    - Lesser curvature
    - Perigastric, NOS
  - Posterior mediastinal (3P) (tracheoesophageal)
- Esophagus GE Junction
  - Celiac (20)
  - Hepatic (excluding gastrohepatic and hepatoduodenal)
  - Left gastric (superior gastric), NOS
    - Cardiac
    - Cardioresophageal
- Gastric, left (17)
- Gastropancreatic, left
- Lesser curvature
- Lesser omental
- Pericardial (16)

- Pancreaticosplenic (pancreaticolineal)
- Pancreatoduodenal
- Perigastric, NOS
- Peripancreatic
- Right gastric (inferior gastric), NOS
  - Gastrocolic
  - Gastroduodenal
  - Gastroepiploic (gastro-omental), right or NOS
  - Gastrohepatic
  - Greater curvature
  - Greater omental
  - Pyloric, NOS
    - Infrapyloric (subpyloric)
    - Suprapyloric
- Splenic (lienal), NOS
  - Gastroepiploic (gastro-omental), left
  - Splenic hilar

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - All subsites
    - Airway
    - Stated as unresectable, NOS
    - Vertebral body
  - Abdomen/lower esophagus
    - Diaphragm fixed
  - Cervical/upper esophagus
    - Lung
    - Pleura
    - Mainstem bronchus
  - Thoracic/middle esophagus
    - Pericardium
  - Esophagus GE Junction
- Abdominal wall
- Adrenal (suprarenal) gland
- Kidney
- Pulmonary ligament (9)
- Retroperitoneum
- Trachea
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - All subsites
    - Anterior mediastinal (6)
    - Common hepatic (18)
    - Diaphragmatic (15)
    - Mediastinal, NOS
    - Splenic (19)
    - Subcarinal (tracheal carina) (7)
  - Cervical esophagus
    - Aortopulmonary (5)
    - Para-aortic (ascending aorta or phrenic)
      - Subaortic
    - Paratracheal (2R, 2L, 4R, 4L)
    - Posterior mediastinal (3P)
    - Superior mediastinal
  - Intrathoracic esophagus, upper or middle, only
    - Aortopulmonary (5)
      - Para-aortic (ascending aorta or phrenic)
    - Cervical
  - Lower thoracic (abdominal) esophagus
    - Aortopulmonary (5)
      - Para-aortic (ascending aorta or phrenic)
      - Subaortic
    - Celiac (20)
    - Paratracheal (2R, 2L, 4R, 4L)
    - Superior mediastinal
  - Esophagus GE Junction
    - Hepatoduodenal
    - Mesenteric, NOS
      - Inferior mesenteric
      - Superior mesenteric
    - Para-aortic
    - Paraesophageal, NOS
    - Periesophageal, NOS
      - Anterior mediastinal (6)
      - Aortopulmonary (5)
      - Paraesophageal, lower (8l)
      - Paraesophageal, middle (8m)
      - Paratracheal, lower (4L, 4R)
      - Paratracheal, upper (2L, 2R)
- Posterior mediastinal (3p)
- Supraclavicular (1)
- Tracheobronchial (hilar) (10L, 10R)
  - Porta hepatis (portal) (hilar) (in hilus of liver)
  - Retropancreatic
  - Retroperitoneal
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
STOMACH

C160 and Schema Discriminator 1: EsophagusGEJunction (EGJ)/Stomach: 0, 3, 9 (8000-8149, 8154, 8157, 8160-8231, 8243-8248, 8250-8682, 8690-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701)

All Other sites: 8000-8149, 8154, 8157, 8160-8231, 8243-8248, 8250-8682, 8690-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

All sites: 8150-8153, 8155-8156, 8158, 8240-8242, 8249, 8683

C160-C166, C168-C169
C160 Cardia of stomach
C161 Fundus of stomach
C162 Body of stomach
C163 Gastric antrum
C164 Pylorus
C165 Lesser curvature of stomach, NOS
C166 Greater curvature of stomach, NOS
C168 Overlapping lesion of stomach
C169 Stomach, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: [https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx](https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx)

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma
**Note 3:** If a tumor involves the esophagogastric junction (EGJ) and its epicenter is less than or equal to 2 cm into the proximal stomach (i.e. less than or equal to 2 cm distal to the EGJ), use the esophageal cancer chapter for summary stage (see the Esophagus (excluding GIST) chapter). Tumors involving the EGJ with their epicenter >2 cm into the proximal stomach (i.e., >2cm distal to the EGJ) are now classified using the stomach chapter. Cardia cancers that do not invade the EGJ should be classified based on the stomach cancer chapter for summary stage.

- Schema Discriminator 1: EsophagusGEJunction (EGJ)/Stomach is used to discriminate between EsophagusGEJunction and Stomach which are coded to ICD-O-3 code C160.

**SUMMARY STAGE**

0 **In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive**
  - (Adeno)carcinoma, noninvasive, in a polyp

1 **Localized only (localized, NOS)**
  - Confined to stomach, NOS
  - Extension through wall, NOS
  - Implants within stomach
  - Intraluminal spread to esophagus or duodenum
  - Invasion of
    - Intramucosa, NOS
    - Lamina propria
    - Mucosa, NOS
    - Muscularis mucosae
    - Muscularis, NOS
    - Muscularis propria
    - Submucosa (superficial, NOS)
  - Linitis plastica (diffuse involvement of the entire stomach wall)
  - Perimuscular tissue invaded
  - Polyp (head, stalk, NOS)
  - Subserosal tissue/(sub)serosal fat

2 **Regional by direct extension only**
  - Adjacent (connective) tissue, NOS
  - Colon/mesocolon (including transverse and flexures)
  - Diaphragm
  - Duodenum (via serosa)
  - Esophagus (via serosa)
  - Gastric artery
  - Ileum
• Jejunum
• Ligaments
  o Gastrocolic
  o Gastrohepatic
  o Gastroplenic
• Liver
• Mesothelium
• Omentum (greater, lesser, NOS)
• Pancreas
• Perigastric fat
• Serosa
• Small intestine, NOS
• Spleen
• Tunica serosa
• Visceral peritoneum

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

• Celiac artery
• Common hepatic artery
• Hepatic, NOS
• Left gastric (superior gastric), NOS
  o Cardial, NOS
  o Cardioesophageal
  o Gastric artery
  o Gastric, left
  o Gastrohepatic
  o Gastropancreatic, left
  o Lesser curvature
  o Lesser omentum
  o Paracardial
• Pancreaticosplenic (pancreaticolineal)
• Perigastric, NOS
• Peripancreatic
• Pyloric, NOS
  o Infrapyloric (subpyloric)
  o Suprapyloric
• Right gastric (inferior gastric, NOS)
  o Gastrocolic
  o Gastroduodenal
  o Gastroepiploic (gastro-omental), right or NOS
  o Gastrohepatic
  o Greater curvature
  o Greater omentum
  o Pancreaticoduodenal
• Splenic (lineal), NOS
  o Gastroepiploic (gastro-omental), left
  o Splenic hilar/hilum
• Nodule(s) in perigastric fat
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

• Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  o Abdominal wall
  o Adrenal (suprarenal) gland
  o Aorta
  o Celiac axis
  o Kidney
  o Retroperitoneum
• Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  o Hepatoduodenal (along the proper hepatic artery, including portal)
  o Intra-abdominal
  o Mesenteric (inferior, superior, NOS)
  o Middle colic
  o Pancreaticoduodenal (all subsites EXCEPT greater curvature)
  o Para-aortic
  o Porta hepatic (portal) (hilar) (in hilus of liver)
  o Retropancreatic
  o Retroperitoneal
• Distant metastasis, NOS
  o Carcinomatosis
  o Krukenberg tumor (metastasis to ovary(ies))
  o Malignant (positive) peritoneal cytology
  o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
SMALL INTESTINE

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C170-C173, C178-C179
C170 Duodenum
C171 Jejunum
C172 Ileum (excluding ileocecal valve C18.0)
C173 Meckel diverticulum (site of neoplasm)
C178 Overlapping lesion of small intestine
C179 Small intestine, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

- (Adeno)carcinoma, noninvasive, in a polyp or adenoma
1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to small intestine, NOS
- Extension through wall, NOS
- Intraluminal spread to other segments of small intestine or cecum
- Invasion of
  - Intramucosa, NOS
  - Lamina propria
  - Mucosa, NOS
  - Muscularis mucosae
  - Muscularis, NOS
  - Muscularis propria
  - Submucosa (superficial invasion)
- Polyp (head, stalk, NOS)
- Subserosal tissue/(sub)serosal fat invaded
- Transmural, NOS
- Wall, NOS

2 Regional by direct extension only

- All sites
  - Abdominal wall (via serosa)
  - Adjacent organ(s)/structure(s)
  - Adjacent tissue(s) (connective), NOS
  - Fat, NOS
  - Mesenteric fat
  - Mesentery (adjacent loops of bowel)
  - Mesothelium
  - Nonperitonealized perimuscular tissue
  - Other loops of small intestine
  - Other segments of small intestine (via serosa)
  - Retroperitoneum
  - Serosa
  - Tunica serosa
  - Visceral peritoneum
- Duodenum (C170)
  - Ampulla of Vater
  - Blood vessel(s), major
    - Aorta
    - Gastroduodenal artery
    - Portal vein
    - Renal vein
    - Superior mesenteric artery or vein
    - Vena cava
  - Diaphragm
- Extrahepatic bile duct(s)
- Gallbladder
- Hepatic flexure
- Kidney (right or NOS)
- Liver (quadrant lobe, right lobe or NOS)
- Omentum
- Pancreas (pancreatic duct)
- Stomach
- Transverse colon
- Ureter, right
- Jejunum and Ileum (C171, C172)
  - Colon including appendix

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- All sites
  - Regional lymph node(s), NOS
    - Lymph node(s), NOS
- Duodenum (C170)
  - Duodenal
  - Gastro-duodenal
  - Hepatic
  - Pancreaticoduodenal (inferior)
  - Pericholedochal (common bile duct)
  - Pyloric (infrapyloric, subpyloric, NOS)
  - Retropancreatic
  - Superior mesenteric
- Jejunum and ileum (C171, C172)
  - Cecal (anterior, posterior, retrocecal) (terminal ileum only)
  - Ileocecal (ileocolic) (terminal ileum only)
  - Mesenteric, NOS
  - Superior mesenteric

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Jejunum and Ileum (C171, C172)
    - Bladder
    - Fallopian tube(s)
• Ovary(ies)
• Uterus

• Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  o Celiac
  o Pericholedochal (jejunum and ileum only)

• Distant metastasis, NOS
  o Carcinomatosis
  o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
APPENDIX

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C181
C181 Appendix

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

- Acellular mucin or mucinous epithelium may invade into the muscularis propria
- (Adeno) carcinoma, noninvasive, in a polyp or adenoma
- Low-grade appendiceal mucinous neoplasm confined by the muscularis propria (LAMN)

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to appendix, NOS
- Confined to polyp, NOS
- Extension through wall, NOS
- Invasion through muscularis propria
- Lamina propria
- Mucosa (intramucosal, NOS)
- Muscularis mucosae
- Non-peritonealized pericolic tissues invaded
- Perimuscular tissue invaded
- Submucosa
- Subserosa
- Transmural, NOS
- Wall, NOS

**2 Regional by direct extension only**

- Abdominal wall
- Adherent to other organs or structures
- Adjacent tissue(s), NOS
- Connective tissue
- Fat, NOS
- Greater omentum
- Mesenteric fat
- Mesentery
- Mesoappendix
- Pericolic fat
- Retroperitoneum
- Serosa (mesothelium) (visceral peritoneum)
- Small intestine
- Tumor found in adhesion(s) if microscopic examination performed

**3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only**

- Tumor deposits (TD) in subserosa or mesentery WITHOUT regional lymph node metastases
- Cecal
  - Anterior (prececal)
  - Posterior (retrocecal)
  - Right colic
- Colic, NOS
- Epicolic (adjacent to bowel wall)
- Ileocolic
- Mesenteric, NOS
- Mesocolic, NOS
- Paracolic/pericolic
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS
4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Adrenal (suprarenal) gland
  - Bladder
  - Diaphragm
  - Fallopian tube
  - Fistula to skin
  - Gallbladder
  - Intraperitoneal spread/peritoneal metastasis
  - Kidney
  - Liver
  - Other segment(s) of colon/rectum via serosa
  - Ovary
  - Ureter
  - Uterus

- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Inferior mesenteric
  - Superior mesenteric

- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
COLON AND RECTUM

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C180, C182-C189, C199, C209
C180 Cecum
C182 Ascending colon
C183 Hepatic flexure of colon
C184 Transverse colon
C185 Splenic flexure of colon
C186 Descending colon
C187 Sigmoid colon
C188 Overlapping lesion of colon
C189 Colon, NOS
C199 Rectosigmoid junction
C209 Rectum, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Code 0 (behavior code 2) includes cancer cells confined within the glandular basement membrane (intraepithelial), or described as in situ.

Note 4: For the following, AJCC 8th edition stages these as in situ tumors. SS2018 stages these as localized (behavior code 3)

- Intramucosal, NOS
- Lamina propria
- Mucosa, NOS
- Confined to, but not through muscularis mucosa

**Note 5:** Ignore intraluminal extension to adjacent segment(s) of colon/rectum or to the ileum from the cecum; code depth of invasion or extracolonic spread as indicated.

**Note 6:** Invasion into "pericolonic/ pericolorectal tissue" can be either Localized or Regional, depending on the primary site. Some sites are entirely peritonealized; some sites are only partially peritonealized or have no peritoneum. Localized may not be used for sites that are entirely peritonealized (cecum, transverse colon, sigmoid colon, rectosigmoid colon, upper third of rectum).

- **Localized**
  - Invasion through muscularis propria or muscularis, NOS
  - Non-peritonealized pericolic/perirectal tissues invaded [Ascending Colon/Descending Colon/Hepatic Flexure/Splenic Flexure: Posterior surface; Middle third of rectum: Anterior surface; Lower third of rectum]
  - Subserosal tissue/(sub)serosal fat invaded
- **Regional**
  - Mesentery
  - Pericolic/Perirectal fat
  - Peritonealized pericolic/perirectal tissues invaded [Ascending Colon/Descending Colon/Hepatic Flexure/Splenic Flexure: anterior and lateral surfaces; Cecum; Sigmoid Colon; Transverse Colon; Rectosigmoid; Rectum: middle third anterior surface]
- If the pathologist does not further describe the “pericolic/perirectal tissues” as either “non-peritonealized pericolic/perirectal tissues” vs “peritonealized pericolic/perirectal tissues” fat and the gross description does not describe the tumor relation to the serosa/peritoneal surface, and it cannot be determined whether the tumor arises in a peritonealized portion of the colon, code Localized.

**Note 7:** Tumor that is adherent to other organs or structures, macroscopically, is coded as regional (code 2) or distant (code 7). However, if no tumor is present in the adhesion, microscopically, the classification should be coded to localized (code 1) or regional (code 2).

**Note 8:** Tumors characterized by involvement of the serosal surface (visceral peritoneum) by direct extension or perforation in which the tumor cells are continuous with the serosal surface through inflammation are coded to regional (code 2).

**SUMMARY STAGE**

**0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive**
1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to colon, rectum, rectosigmoid, NOS
- Extension through wall, NOS
- Intraluminal extension to colon and/or anal canal/anus (rectum only)
- Invasion of
  - Intramucosal, NOS
  - Lamina propria
  - Mucosa, NOS
  - Muscularis mucosae
  - Muscularis, NOS
  - Muscularis propria
  - Submucosa (superficial invasion)
- Non-peritonealized pericolic tissues invaded (see Regional for peritonealized pericolic/perirectal tissues invaded. See Note 6)
- Pericolic/perirectal tissues invaded, NOS (unknown whether non-peritonealized or peritonealized. See Note 6)
- Perimuscular tissue invaded
- Polyp (head, stalk, NOS)
- Subserosal tissue/(sub)serosal fat invaded
- Transmural, NOS
- Wall, NOS

2 Regional by direct extension only

- All sites
  - Abdominal wall
  - Adherent to other organs or structures clinically with no microscopic examination
  - Adjacent (connective) tissue(s), NOS
  - Fat, NOS
  - Mesentery (including mesenteric fat, mesocolon)
  - Mesothelium
  - Pericolic fat
  - Perirectal fat
  - Peritonealized pericolic/perirectal tissues invaded (see Localized for non-peritonealized pericolic/perirectal tissues invaded. See Note 6)
  - Retroperitoneum (excluding fat)
  - Serosa
  - Small intestine
  - Tumor found in adhesion(s) if microscopic examination performed
  - Tunica serosa
  - Visceral peritoneum
- Cecum (C180)
  - Greater omentum
- Ascending colon (C182)
- Kidney, right
- Liver, right lobe
- Retroperitoneal fat
- Ureter, right
- Transverse colon and flexures (C183, C184, C185)
  - Bile ducts
  - Gallbladder
  - Gastrocolic ligament
  - Greater omentum
  - Kidney
  - Liver
  - Pancreas
  - Spleen
  - Stomach
- Descending colon (C186)
  - Kidney, left
  - Pelvic wall
  - Retroperitoneal fat
  - Spleen
  - Ureter, left
- Sigmoid colon (C187)
  - Pelvic wall
- Rectosigmoid (C199)
  - Cul de sac (rectouterine pouch)
  - Pelvic wall
  - Small intestine
- Rectum (C209)
  - Anus
  - Bladder (males only)
  - Cul de sac (rectouterine pouch)
  - Ductus deferens
  - Pelvic wall
  - Prostate
  - Rectovaginal septum
  - Rectovesical fat (males only)
  - Seminal vesicle(s)
  - Skeletal muscles of pelvic floor
  - Vagina

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- All sites
  - Colic, NOS
  - Epicolic (adjacent to bowel wall)
  - Mesenteric, NOS
- Mesocolic, NOS
- Paracolic
- Pericolic
- Tumor deposits (TD) in the subserosa, mesentery, mesorectal or nonperitonealized pericolic or perirectal tissues WITHOUT regional nodal metastasis
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS
- Cecum (C180)
  - Cecal, NOS
    - Anterior cecal (prececal)
    - Posterior cecal (retrocecal)
  - Colic (right)
  - Ileocolic
  - Periappendiceal
- Ascending colon (C182)
  - Colic (middle-right branch, right)
  - Ileocolic
- Hepatic flexure (C183)
  - Colic (middle, right)
  - Ileocolic
- Transverse colon (C184)
  - Colic (middle)
- Splenic flexure (C185)
  - Colic (left, middle)
  - Mesenteric (inferior)
- Descending colon (C186)
  - Colic (left)
  - Mesenteric (inferior)
  - Sigmoid
- Sigmoid colon (C187)
  - Colic (left)
  - Mesenteric (inferior)
  - Rectal (superior) (hemorrhoidal)
  - Rectosigmoid
  - Sigmoid (sigmoidal) (sigmoid mesenteric)
  - Superior rectal (hemorrhoidal)
- Rectosigmoid (C199)
  - Hemorrhoidal (middle, superior)
  - Mesenteric (inferior)
  - Mesorectal
  - Pericolic
  - Perirectal
  - Rectal (middle, superior)
  - Sigmoid (mesenteric)
- Rectum (C209)
o Hemorrhoidal (middle, superior)
o Iliac (hypogastric, internal, obturator) (see code 7 for common, external, NOS)
o Mesenteric (inferior)
o Mesorectal
o Perirectal
o Rectal (inferior)
o Sacral, NOS
  ▪ Lateral sacral (laterosacral)
  ▪ Middle sacral (promontorial) (Gerota’s node)
  ▪ Presacral
o Sigmoidal (sigmoid mesenteric)

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

  • Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

  • Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
    o All sites
      ▪ Adrenal (suprarenal) gland
      ▪ Bladder
      ▪ Diaphragm
      ▪ Fallopian tube
      ▪ Fistula to skin
      ▪ Gallbladder
      ▪ Other segment(s) of colon via serosa
      ▪ Ovary(ies)
      ▪ Uterus
    o Cecum (C180)
      ▪ Kidney, right
      ▪ Liver
      ▪ Ureter, right
    o Transverse colon and flexures (C183-C185)
      ▪ Ureter
    o Sigmoid colon (C187)
      ▪ Cul de sac (rectouterine pouch)
      ▪ Ureter
    o Rectosigmoid (C199)
      ▪ Bladder
      ▪ Colon via serosa
      ▪ Fallopian tube
      ▪ Ovary
      ▪ Prostate
- Skeletal muscles of pelvic floor
- Ureter
- Vagina
  - Rectum (C209)
    - Bladder (for females only)
    - Bone(s) of pelvis
    - Cervix
    - Perineum, perianal skin
    - Sacral plexus
    - Sacrum
    - Ureter
    - Urethra
    - Uterus
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Colon
    - Iliac (common, external, hypogastric, internal, obturator, NOS)
    - Inferior mesenteric (cecum, ascending colon, hepatic flexure, transverse colon)
    - Para-aortic
    - Retroperitoneal
    - Superior mesenteric
  - Rectosigmoid
    - Hemorrhoidal, inferior (rectosigmoid)
    - Iliac (common, external, hypogastric, internal, obturator, NOS)
    - Rectal, inferior
    - Superior mesenteric
  - Rectum
    - Colic (left) (rectum)
    - Iliac (common, external, NOS) (see code 3 for hypogastric, internal, obturator)
    - Superior mesenteric
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Peritoneal surface metastasis (peritoneum)
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
ANUS

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C210-C212, C218
C210 Anus, NOS (excluding skin of anus and perianal skin C445)
C211 Anal canal
C212 Cloacogenic zone
C218 Overlapping lesion of rectum, anus and anal canal

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8804-8806, 8930-8931, 8991, 9020, 9044, 9231, 9581: Soft Tissue Other
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

- Anal intraepithelial neoplasia III
- Bowen disease

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to anus, NOS
- Incidental finding of malignancy in hemorrhoid, NOS
- Intramucosa
- Lamina propria
- Mucosa, NOS
- Muscularis mucosae
- Muscularis propria (internal sphincter)
- Submucosa (superficial invasion)
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Ischiorectal fat/tissue
- Perianal skin
- Perineum
- Perirectal skin
- Rectal mucosa or submucosa
- Rectal wall
- Skeletal muscle(s)
  - Anal sphincter (external)
  - Levator ani
- Subcutaneous perianal tissue
- Vulva

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Anorectal
- External iliac
- Inferior hemorrhoidal
- Inguinal (femoral) (deep, superficial)
- Internal iliac (hypogastric)
- Lateral sacral (laterosacral)
- Mesorectal
- Obturator
- Perirectal
- Superior rectal (hemorrhoidal) (femoral)
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Bladder
  - Broad ligament(s)
  - Cervix uteri
  - Corpus uteri
  - Pelvic peritoneum
  - Prostate
  - Urethra
- Vagina
  - Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Distant metastasis, NOS
    - Carcinomatosis
    - Distant metastases WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
LIVER

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C220
C220 Liver

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to liver, NOS
- Single tumor (one lobe)
  - WITHOUT or UNKNOWN vascular invasion
- Multiple (satellite) nodules/tumors (one lobe)
  - WITHOUT or UNKNOWN vascular invasion

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Diaphragm
- Extrahepatic bile duct(s)
- Extrahepatic blood vessel(s)
  - Hepatic artery
  - Portal vein
  - Vena cava
• Gallbladder
• Lesser omentum
• Ligament(s)
  o Coronary
  o Falciform
  o Hepatoduodenal
  o Hepatogastric
  o Round (of liver)
  o Triangular
• Peritoneum, NOS
  o Parietal
  o Visceral
• Major vascular invasion, NOS
• More than one lobe involved by contiguous growth (single lesion)
  o WITH or WITHOUT vascular invasion
• Multiple (satellite) nodules/ tumors in more than one lobe of liver or on surface of parenchyma
  o WITH or WITHOUT vascular invasion
• Single lesion (one lobe) WITH vascular invasion

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

• Caval
• Hepatic, NOS
  o Hepatic artery
  o Hepatic pedicle
  o Inferior vena cava
  o Porta hepatis (portal) (hilar) [in hilus of liver] Hepatoduodenal ligament
• Periportal
• Portal vein
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

• Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  o Pancreas
  o Pleura
  o Stomach
• Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  o Aortic (para-aortic, periaortic)
  o Cardiac
  o Coronary artery
  o Diaphragmatic, NOS
  o Inferior phrenic nodes
  o Lateral (aortic) (lumbar)
  o Pericardial (pericardiac)
  o Peripancreatic (near head of pancreas only)
  o Posterior mediastinal (tracheoesophageal) including juxtaphrenic nodes
  o Renal artery
  o Retroperitoneal, NOS

• Distant metastasis, NOS
  o Carcinomatosis
  o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
INTRAHEPATIC BILE DUCTS

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8980, 9700-9701

C221
C221 Intrahepatic bile duct

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8975, 8981-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Intrahepatic vascular invasion (code 1) includes the following

- Major hepatic vessel invasion
  - First and second-order branches of the portal veins or hepatic arteries
- Hepatic veins (right, middle, or left)
- Microscopic invasion of smaller intraparenchymal vascular structures (identified on histopathological examination)

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

- Biliary intraepithelial neoplasia grade 3 (BiIN-3)
- Intraductal tumor

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to intrahepatic bile duct, NOS
- Solitary or Multiple tumors WITH or WITHOUT intrahepatic vascular invasion
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Abdominal wall
- Adjacent (connective) tissue, NOS
- Colon
- Common bile duct
- Diaphragm
- Duodenum
- Extrahepatic bile ducts PLUS satellite nodules in more than one lobe
- Extrahepatic structure(s), NOS
  - Retrohepatic vena cava
  - Vena cava
- Hepatic artery (proper)
- Gallbladder
- Lesser omentum ligament(s)
  - Coronary
  - Falciform
  - Hepatoduodenal
  - Hepatogastric
  - Round (of liver)
  - Triangular
- Peritoneum, NOS
  - Parietal
  - Visceral
- Multiple tumors with major vascular invasion
- Retrohepatic vena cava

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Common bile duct
- Cystic duct
- Hepatic, NOS
- Hepatic artery
- Hepatic pedicle
- Hepatoduodenal ligament
- Hilar
- Portal vein
  - Periportal
  - Porta hepatitis
  - Portal
- Portocaval (portacaval)
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS
4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Multiple (satellite) nodules on surface of liver parenchyma
  - Pancreas
  - Pleura
  - Stomach
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Aortic (para-aortic, periaortic)
  - Aortocaval
  - Cardiac
  - Caval (inferior vena cava)
  - Celiac
  - Diaphragmatic, NOS
  - Gastrohepatic
  - Inferior phrenic
  - Lateral (aortic) (lumbar)
  - Pancreaticoduodenal
  - Pericardial (pericardiac)
  - Periduodenal
  - Peripancreatic
  - Posterior mediastinal (tracheoesophageal) including juxtaphrenic nodes
  - Renal artery
  - Retroperitoneal, NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
GALLBLADDER

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C239
C239 Gallbladder

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to gallbladder, NOS
- Lamina propria
- Mucosa, NOS
- Muscularis propria (layer)
- Submucosa (superficial invasion)

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Ampulla of Vater
- Branch(es) of hepatic artery (right or left)
- Branch(es) of portal vein (right or left)
- Duodenum
- Extrahepatic bile duct(s)
- Liver, less than or equal to 2 cm OR distance not stated
• Omentum (greater, lesser, NOS)
• Pancreas
• Perimuscular connective tissue (peritoneal and hepatic side)
• Serosa (visceral peritoneum)
• Small intestine, NOS

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

• Celiac artery
• Cystic duct (Calot’s node)
• Hepatic artery
• Node of foramen of Winslow (omentum) (epiploic)
• Pancreaticoduodenal
• Pericholedochal (common bile duct)
• Periduodenal
• Peripancreatic (near head of pancreas only)
• Porta hepatis (portal) (periportal) (hilar) (in hilus of liver)
• Portal vein
• Retroperitoneal, NOS
• Superior mesenteric
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

• Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  o Abdominal wall
  o Colon
  o Cystic artery/vein
  o Diaphragm
  o Hepatic artery (common, NOS)
  o Liver, greater than 2 cm
  o Portal vein (main, NOS)
  o Stomach
  o Two or more extrahepatic organs or structures
• Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  o Para-aortic
  o Pericaval
  o Peripancreatic (along body and tail of pancreas only)
• Distant metastasis, NOS
  o Carcinomatosis
  o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
EXTRAHEPATIC BILE DUCTS

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C240
C240 Cystic duct
C240 Distal bile ducts
C240 Perihilar bile ducts

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

High-grade biliary intraepithelial neoplasia (BilIn-3)

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to
  - Cystic duct, NOS
  - Distal bile duct(s), NOS
  - Extrahepatic bile duct(s), NOS
- Perihilar bile duct(s), NOS
  - Lamina propria
  - Mucosa, NOS
  - Muscle layer of fibrous tissue (bile ducts perihilar only)
  - Muscularis propria
  - Subepithelial connective tissue (tunica mucosa) (bile ducts perihilar only)
  - Submucosa (superficial invasion)

2 Regional by direct extension only

- All sites
  - Adipose tissue
  - Adjacent (connective) tissue, NOS
  - Colon
  - Duodenum
  - Gallbladder
  - Hepatic artery (common, NOS)
  - Liver
  - Main portal vein or its branches bilaterally
  - Omentum (greater, lesser, NOS)
  - Pancreas
  - Periductal/fibromuscular connective tissue
  - Portal vein, NOS
  - Stomach

- Cystic duct
  - Ampulla of Vater
  - Beyond wall of cystic duct
  - Perimuscular connective tissue
  - Perimuscular tissue, NOS
  - Serosa (visceral peritoneum)
  - Small intestine
  - Unilateral branches of hepatic artery (right or left)
  - Unilateral branches of portal vein (right or left)

- Distal bile duct(s)
  - Adipose tissue
  - Adjacent hepatic parenchyma
  - Beyond wall of bile duct
  - Porta hepatis
  - Unilateral branches of hepatic artery (right or left)
  - Unilateral branches of portal vein (right or left)

- Perihilar bile duct(s)
  - Beyond wall of bile duct
  - Second-order biliary radicals bilaterally
    - Unilateral second-order biliary radicals
    - WITH contralateral portal vein or hepatic artery involvement
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Adipose tissue
- Adjacent (connective) tissue, NOS
- Choledochal (bile ducts perihilar only)
- Cystic duct (node of the neck of the gallbladder) (Calot's node)
- Hepatic/hepatic artery nodes (common, NOS)
- Hilar (porta hepatic) (portal) (in hilus of liver)
- Node of the foramen of Winslow (omentumal) (epiploic)
- Pancreaticoduodenal (anterior, posterior) (bile ducts distal only)
- Pancreaticoduodenal, NOS (cystic duct only)
- Pericholedochal (node along common bile duct)
- Periduodenal
- Peripancreatic (near head of pancreas only)
- Periportal
- Portal vein
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Abdominal wall
  - Celiac axis (bile ducts distal only)
  - Superior mesenteric artery (bile ducts distal only)
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Celiac (axis) artery
  - Para-aortic
  - Periaortic (cystic duct only)
  - Pericaval
  - Peripancreatic (along body and tail of pancreas only)
  - Superior mesenteric artery
  - Superior mesenteric vein
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
AMPULLA OF VATER

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C241
C241 Ampulla of Vater

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Ampulla of Vater
- Confined to ampulla, NOS
- Duodenal submucosa
- Perisphincteric invasion (invasion beyond sphincter of Oddi)
- Sphincter of Oddi
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Blood vessel(s) (major)
  - Common hepatic artery
  - Portal vein
  - Superior mesenteric artery
- Celiac axis
- Common bile duct
- Duodenum, NOS
- Extrahepatic bile duct(s)
- Gallbladder
- Hepatic flexure of colon
- Lesser omentum
- Liver including porta hepatis
- Muscularis propria of the duodenum (duodenal wall)
- Pancreas
- Stomach (distal, proximal, NOS)
- Transverse colon

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Anterior to ampulla of Vater
- Inferior to ampulla of Vater
- Posterior to ampulla of Vater
- Superior to ampulla of Vater
- Celiac
- Hepatic
- Hepatic artery
- Lateral aortic (lumbar)
- Node of foramen of the Winslow (epiploic) (omental)
- Pancreaticoduodenal
- Peripancreatic (excluding nodes at tail of pancreas)
- Periportal (portal vein)
- Proximal mesenteric
- Pyloric (infrapyloric, subpyloric)
- Retroperitoneal
- Superior mesenteric
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant sites (including further contiguous extension)
  - Peripancreatic soft tissue
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - At tail of pancreas
  - Para-aortic
  - Splenic
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant mets WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
BILIARY OTHER

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C248, C249
C248 Overlapping lesion of biliary tract (neoplasms involving both intrahepatic and extrahepatic bile ducts)
C249 Biliary tract, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to bile duct, NOS
- Lamina propria
- Mucosa, NOS
- Muscularis propria
- Submucosa (superficial invasion)

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Ampulla of Vater
- Beyond wall of bile duct
- Duodenum
- Gallbladder
  - Unilateral branches of the right or left hepatic artery OR portal vein
• Invasion of/through serosa
• Liver, less than or equal to 2 cm or UNKNOWN
• Omentum (greater or lesser)
• Pancreas
• Perimuscular connective tissue
• Small intestine

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

• Celiac
• Cystic duct (node of Calot)
• Node of foramen of Winslow (epiploic) (omentoal)
• Pancreaticoduodenal
• Pericholecodochal (common bile duct)
• Periduodenal
• Peripancreatic (near head of pancreas only)
• Porta hepatis (portal) (periportal) (hilar)
• Superior mesenteric
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

• Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  o Abdominal wall
  o Colon
  o Common hepatic artery
  o Cystic artery/vein
  o Hepatic artery, NOS
  o Liver greater than 2 cm
  o Portal vein or its branches bilaterally
  o Portal vein, NOS
  o Stomach
• Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  o Para-aortic
  o Peripancreatic (along body and tail of pancreas only)
• Distant metastasis, NOS
  o Carcinomatosis
  o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
PANCREAS

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8971, 9700-9701

C250-C254, C257-C259
C250 Head of pancreas
C251 Body of pancreas
C252 Tail of pancreas
C253 Pancreatic duct
C254 Islets of Langerhans
C257 Other specified parts of pancreas
C258 Overlapping lesion of pancreas
C259 Pancreas, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8970, 8972-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: For tumors of the islet cells, determine which subsite of the pancreas is involved and use that primary site code. If the subsite cannot be determined, use the general code for Islets of Langerhans, C254.

Note 4: The terms “abutment,” “abut(s),” “encases,” or “encasement” of the major blood vessels can be interpreted as involvement of these structures.
SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

- High-grade pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PanIn-3)
- Intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm with high grade dysplasia
- Intraductal tubulopapillary neoplasm with high grade neoplasm
- Mucinous cystic neoplasm with high-grade dysplasia

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to pancreas

2 Regional by direct extension only

- All sites
  - Ampulla of Vater
  - Blood vessel(s) (major)
    - Aortic artery
    - Celiac artery
    - Common hepatic artery
    - Further contiguous extension to other major arteries
    - Portal vein
    - Superior mesenteric artery/vein
  - Duodenum
  - Extrahepatic bile duct(s)
  - Fixation to adjacent structure(s), NOS
  - Peripancreatic tissue, NOS
  - Stomach
- Pancreas Head (C250)
  - Adjacent stomach
  - Blood vessel(s) (major)
    - Gastroduodenal artery
  - Transverse colon, including hepatic flexure
- Pancreas Body Tail (C251, C252)
  - Spleen
  - Splenic artery/vein
  - Splenic flexure
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- All sites
  - Anterior, NOS
  - Common hepatic artery
  - Hepatic, NOS
  - Inferior to head and body of pancreas
  - Lateral aortic (lumbar)
  - Pancreaticoduodenal (anterior, posterior)
  - Peripancreatic, NOS
  - Posterior, NOS
  - Proximal mesentery (anterior, posterior)
  - Retroperitoneal
  - Superior mesenteric
  - Superior to head and body of pancreas
  - Regional lymph node(s), NOS
    - Lymph node(s), NOS
- Pancreas Head (C250)
  - Common bile duct (pericholedochal)
  - Lateral wall (right)
  - Portal vein
  - Pyloric (infra-, retro-, subpyloric, suprapyloric)
  - Pyloric, NOS
- Pancreas Body Tail (C251, C252)
  - Gastroepiploic (gastro-omental, left)
  - Pancreaticosplenic (pancreaticolineal)
  - Splenic (artery, hilum, lineal)
  - Suprapancreatic

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension to other organs)
  - All sites
    - Adrenal gland/suprarenal gland
    - Gallbladder
    - Kidney
    - Liver, including porta hepatis
    - Mesenteric fat
    - Mesentery
    - Mesocolon
- Peritoneum
- Retroperitoneum
- Small intestine (excluding duodenum)
- Ureter
  - Pancreas Head (C250)
    - Colon (other than transverse colon including hepatic flexure)
    - Omentum
    - Spleen
  - Pancreas Body Tail (C251, C252)
    - Colon (other than splenic flexure)
    - Diaphragm
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Pancreas Head (C250)
    - Celiac
    - Gastroepiploic (gastro-omental), left
    - Pancreaticosplenic (pancreaticolienal)
    - Splenic (lineal), NOS
    - Splenic artery
    - Splenic hilum
    - Suprapancreatic
  - Pancreas Body Tail (C251, C252)
    - Celiac
    - Pericholedochal (common bile duct)
    - Porta hepatic
    - Pyloric (infrapyloric, retropyloric, subpyloric, suprapyloric)
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis except distant lymph node(s)
  - Seeding of peritoneum, even if limited to the lesser sac region
  - Positive peritoneal cytology

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
DIGESTIVE OTHER

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C260, C268, C269
C260 Intestinal tract, NOS
C268 Overlapping lesion of digestive system
C269 Gastrointestinal tract, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Invasion of submucosa

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent connective tissue(s)
- Adjacent organ(s)/structure(s)
- Regional extension, NOS
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Intra-abdominal
- Paracaval
- Pelvic
- Subdiaphragmatic
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
RESPIRATORY TRACT AND THORAX

Trachea:
The trachea is a cartilaginous and fibromuscular tube that extends from the inferior aspect of the cricoid cartilage (sixth cervical vertebra level) to the main carina (fifth thoracic vertebra level). Its length is 10-12 cm in adults (of which 2-4 cm is extrathoracic and 6-9 cm intrathoracic). The tracheal wall has four different layers: mucosa, submucosa, cartilage or muscle, and adventitia. The posterior tracheal wall lacks cartilage and instead is supported by a thin band of smooth muscle.

Lungs:
The lungs are covered by the visceral pleura, which is contiguous with the parietal pleura as it reflects from the lateral surfaces of the mediastinum. The visceral pleura forms in-foldings into both lungs, which are called fissures. There are two complete fissures in the right lung and one complete fissure with an incomplete fissure in the left; these separate the different lung lobes. The pleura also forms the pulmonary ligament, which is a double layer of pleura that extends posteriorly along the mediastinum from the inferior pulmonary vein to the diaphragm.

Penetration of the visceral pleura indicates a progression of invasion, even in small (≤ 3cm) tumors. Visceral pleural invasion is considered present both in tumors that extend to the visceral pleural surface (type PL2 invasion), and in tumors that penetrate beyond the elastic layer of the visceral pleura (type PL1 invasion).

There are two mainstem bronchi (right and left) and three lobar bronchi (right), with a total of ten segmental bronchi; two lobar bronchi are found on the left, with a total of eight segmental bronchi. The functional subunits of each lung are called segments and have a close relation with the segmental bronchi, as described. The right lung comprises ten segments: three in the right upper lobe, two in the right middle lobe, and five in the right lower lobe. The left lung comprises eight segments: four in the left upper lobe and four in the left lower lobe.
RESPIRATORY TRACT AND THORAX

TRACHEA

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C339
C339 Trachea

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Invasive tumor confined to trachea

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent connective tissue
  - Arch of aorta
  - Azygos vein, right
  - Brachiocephalic vein
  - Carotid sheath
  - Common carotid artery(ies)
  - Jugular arch
  - Phrenic nerves
  - Pretracheal fascia
- Recurrent laryngeal nerve
- Subclavian artery(ies)
- Vagus nerve
- Adjacent organ(s)/structure(s)
  - Cricoid cartilage
  - Esophagus
  - Pleura, NOS
    - Parietal
    - Visceral
  - Right and left main bronchi
  - Sternum
  - Thymus
  - Thyroid gland
  - Vertebral column

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only
- Mediastinal, NOS
  - Posterior (tracheoesophageal)
- Paratracheal
- Pretracheal
- Tracheal, NOS
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved
- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved
- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
THYMUS

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C379
C379 Thymus

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to thymus, NOS
- No mediastinal or pleura involvement or UNKNOWN if involved

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Brachiocephalic vein
- Chest wall
- Confined to thymus WITH mediastinal or pleural involvement
- Direct invasion of pericardium
- Extrapericardial pulmonary artery or vein
- Lung
- Phrenic nerve
- Superior vena cava
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Ascending aorta
- Cervical (low anterior)
- Hilar
- Internal mammary
- Lower jugular
- Mediastinal (lower, middle, NOS)
- Para-aortic
- Paratracheal (lower, upper, NOS)
- Peri-thymic
- Peri-thyroid
- Pericardial
- Phrenic (inferior, superior)
- Precricoid/delphian
- Pretracheal
- Prevascular
- Subaortic/aortopulmonary window
- Subcarinal
- Supraclavicular/venous angle: confluence of internal jugular and subclavian vein
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Extrathoracic sites
  - Separate pleural or pericardial nodule(s)
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)
    - OR with pleural or pericardial nodule(s) metastasis

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
LUNG

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8972, 8980, 9700-9701

C340-C343, C348-C349
C340 Main bronchus
C341 Upper lobe, lung
C342 Middle lobe, lung
C343 Lower lobe, lung
C348 Overlapping lesion of lung
C349 Lung, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8971, 8973-8975, 8981-9045, 9054-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9050-9053: Pleural Mesothelioma
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: “Bronchopneumonia” is not the same thing as “obstructive pneumonitis” and should not be coded as such.

Note 4: Atelectasis is the failure of the lung to expand (inflate) completely. This may be caused by a blocked airway, a tumor, general anesthesia, pneumonia or other lung infections, lung disease, or long-term bedrest with shallow breathing. Sometimes called a collapsed lung.

- For staging purposes, atelectasis must present with an obstructing tumor (code 2)

Note 5: Specific information about visceral pleura invasion (PL1 or PL2) or parietal pleural invasion (PL3) are coded as regional (code 2). Elastic layer involvement has prognostic significance for lung cancer.
Note 6: Separate ipsilateral tumor nodules of the same histopathological type (intrapulmonary metastases) are coded either regional (code 2) for same lobe or distant (code 7) for different ipsilateral lobe or contralateral lung.

Note 7: “Vocal cord paralysis,” “superior vena cava syndrome,” and “compression of the trachea or the esophagus” are classified as mediastinal lymph node involvement (code 3) unless there is a statement of involvement by direct extension from the primary tumor.

Note 8: Most pleural and pericardial effusions with lung cancer are due to tumor. In a few patients, however, multiple cytological examinations of pleural and/or pericardial fluid are negative for tumor, and the fluid is nonbloody and is not an exudate. Where these elements and clinical judgment dictate that the effusion is not related to the tumor, the effusion should be excluded as a staging element.

Note 9: Occult carcinoma occurs when tumor is proven by the presence of malignant cells or bronchial washings, but there is no other evidence of the tumor. These cases are coded as unknown (code 9).

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive
- Adenocarcinoma in situ (AIS): adenocarcinoma with pure lepidic pattern, less than or equal to 3 cm in greatest dimension
- Squamous cell carcinoma in situ (SCIS)

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)
- Adjacent ipsilateral lobe
- Confined to carina, NOS
- Confined to hilus
- Confined to lung, NOS
- Main stem bronchus, NOS (without involvement of the carina)
  - Including extension from other part of lung
- Minimally invasive adenocarcinoma
  - Adenocarcinoma tumor WITH predominantly lepidic pattern (AIS) measuring less than or equal to 3 cm in greatest dimension
    - WITH invasive component measuring less than or equal to 5 mm in greatest dimension
- Superficial tumor, WITH invasive component limited to bronchial wall
  - WITH or WITHOUT proximal extension to main stem bronchus
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Atelectasis/obstructive pneumonitis
  - Extends to hilar region, involving part or all of lung
- Blood vessel(s) (major)
  - Aorta
  - Azygos vein
  - Pulmonary artery or vein
  - Superior vena cava (SVC syndrome)
- Brachial plexus
- Carina from lung
- Chest wall (thoracic wall)
- Compression of esophagus or trachea not specified as direct extension
- Diaphragm (separate lesion-see code 7)
- Esophagus
- Mediastinum, extrapulmonary or NOS
- Nerve(s)
  - Cervical sympathetic (Horner’s syndrome)
  - Recurrent laryngeal (vocal cord paralysis)
  - Vagus
- Pancoast tumor (superior sulcus syndrome), NOS
- Parietal pericardium
- Parietal pleura
- Pericardium, NOS
- Phrenic nerve
- Pleura, NOS
- Pulmonary ligament
- Separate tumor nodule(s) in the same lobe as the primary
- Visceral pleura invasion (PL1, PL2, PL3, or NOS)
- Trachea

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- IPSILATERAL nodes only
  - Bronchial
  - Carinal (tracheobronchial) (tracheal bifurcation)
  - Hilar (bronchopulmonary) (proximal lobar) (pulmonary root)
  - Intrapulmonary
    - Interlobar
    - Lobar
    - Segmental
    - Subsegmental
  - Mediastinal, NOS
    - Anterior
    - Aortic (above diaphragm), NOS
• Peri/para-aortic, NOS
  ▪ Ascending aorta (phrenic)
  ▪ Subaortic (aortic-pulmonary window)
• Inferior mediastinal
  ▪ Paraesophageal
  ▪ Pulmonary ligament
  ▪ Subcarinal
• Posterior (tracheoesophageal)
• Superior mediastinal
  ▪ Paratracheal (left, right, upper, low, NOS)
  ▪ Prevascular
  ▪ Retrotracheal
  o Peri/parabronchial
  o Periesophageal
  o Pericardial
  o Peritracheal, NOS
    ▪ Azygos (lower peritracheal)
  o Precarinal
  o Pretracheal, NOS
  o Regional lymph node(s), NOS
    ▪ Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

• Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  o Abdominal organs
  o Adjacent rib
  o Contralateral lung/main stem bronchus
  o Contralateral main stem bronchus
  o Heart
  o Inferior vena cava
  o Neural foramina
  o Pericardial nodules or pleural effusion (malignant) (ipsilateral, contralateral, bilateral, NOS)
  o Pleural tumor foci or nodules on ipsilateral lung (separate from direct extension) or contralateral lung
  o Rib
  o Separate tumor nodule(s) in contralateral lung
  o Separate tumor nodule(s) in a different ipsilateral lobe
  o Skeletal muscle
- Skin of chest
- Sternum
- Vertebra(e) (vertebral body)
- Visceral pericardium

- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - IPSILATERAL or CONTRALATERAL
    - Low cervical
    - Proximal root
    - Scalene (inferior deep cervical)
    - Sternal notch
    - Supraclavicular (transverse cervical)
  - CONTRALATERAL/BILATERAL nodes
    - Bronchial
    - Cervical
    - Hilar (bronchopulmonary) (proximal lobar) (pulmonary root)
    - Mediastinal
      - Anterior
      - Aortic (above diaphragm), NOS
        - Peri/para-aortic, NOS
          - Ascending aorta (phrenic)
          - Subaortic (aortic-pulmonary window)
      - Inferior mediastinal
        - Paraesophageal
        - Pulmonary ligament
        - Subcarinal
  - Periesophageal
  - Posterior (tracheoesophageal)
  - Pretracheal
  - Superior mediastinal
    - Paratracheal (left, right, upper, low, NOS)
    - Prevascular
    - Retrotracheal

- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
PLEURAL MESOTHELIOMA

9050-9053

C340-C343, C348-C349, C384
C340 Main bronchus
C341 Upper lobe, lung
C342 Middle lobe, lung
C343 Lower lobe, lung
C348 Overlapping lesion of lung
C349 Lung, NOS
C384 Pleura

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: Code 0 is not applicable for this chapter.

Note 3: Most pleural effusions are due to tumor. When the cytopathological examinations of pleural fluid are negative for tumor, the effusion should be excluded as a staging element and the tumor should not be classified as metastasis.

- The physician statement of pleural effusion can be used to code this data item
- If the physician feels the pleural effusion is due to tumor, despite negative cytology, the physician’s assessment can be used.
- If pleural fluid cytology is described as suspicious/suspicious for mesothelioma, code 7

SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to pleura, NOS
- Invasive tumor (mesothelioma) confined to pleura, NOS
- Ipsilateral parietal pleura WITH or WITHOUT involvement of
  - Diaphragmatic pleural
  - Mediastinal pleura
  - Parietal pleura
  - Visceral pleura
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent (connective) tissue, NOS
- Chest wall
- Confluent visceral pleural tumor (including any involvement of interlobar fissure)
- Diaphragmatic muscle
- Endothoracic fascia
- Ipsilateral pleural surfaces all involved
  - Diaphragmatic, parietal, mediastinal, and visceral
- Lung parenchyma, or lung involvement, NOS
- Mediastinal fat (mediastinal tissues)
- Mediastinal organs (direct extension)
- Nodule(s) beneath visceral pleural surface (ipsilateral pleura)
- Pericardium (extension through the internal surface) (non-transmural, NOS) WITHOUT pericardial effusion
- Pulmonary parenchyma (visceral pleural extension)
- Rib

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Aortic (above diaphragm), NOS
  - Ascending aorta (phrenic)
  - Peri/para-aortic
  - Subaortic (aortico-pulmonary window)
- Carinal (tracheobronchial) (tracheal bifurcation)
- Hilar (ipsilateral)
  - Bronchopulmonary
  - Proximal lobar
  - Pulmonary root
- Intercostal
- Internal mammary (parasternal)
- Intrapulmonary
  - Interlobar
  - Lobar
  - Segmental
  - Subsegmental
- Mediastinal, NOS (ipsilateral)
  - Anterior
  - Posterior (tracheoesophageal)
- Pericardial
- Peri/parabronchial
- Peri/paraesophageal (below carina)
- Peri/paratracheal (lower [azygos], upper, NOS)
- Pretracheal and retrotracheal (precarinal), NOS
- Prevascular
- Pulmonary ligament
- Subcardial
- Subcarinal
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 **Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved**

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 **Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved**

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Brachial plexus
  - Cervical (neck) tissues
  - Contralateral lung
  - Contralateral pleura (direct contiguous extension)
  - Contralateral pleura/chest wall (discontinuous involvement)
  - Heart muscle
  - Intra-abdominal organs
  - Mediastinal organs (discontinuous involvement)
  - Mesothelioma WITH malignant pleural fluid
  - Pericardial effusion, malignant
  - Pericardium WITH pericardial effusion
  - Peritoneum (direct transdiaphragmatic extension of tumor)
  - Peritoneum (discontinuous extension of tumor)
  - Pleural effusion (see Note 3)
  - Spine

- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Hilar (contralateral, bilateral)
    - Bronchopulmonary
    - Proximal lobar
    - Pulmonary root
  - Mediastinal (contralateral, bilateral)
    - Anterior
    - Posterior (tracheoesophageal)
  - Peridiaphragmatic (ipsilateral, contralateral)
    - Mediastinal
  - Scalene (ipsilateral, contralateral)
    - Inferior deep cervical
  - Supraclavicular (ipsilateral or contralateral)
    - Transverse cervical

- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 **Unknown if extension or metastasis**
RESPIRATORY OTHER

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C390, C398-C399
C390 Upper respiratory tract, NOS
C398 Overlapping lesion of respiratory system and intrathoracic organs
C399 Ill-defined sites within respiratory system

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to site of origin

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent connective tissue
- Adjacent organ(s)/structure(s)
  - Descending aorta
  - Esophagus
  - Large (named) artery(ies)
  - Large (named) vein(s)
  - Pericardium (parietal, visceral [pericardium])
  - Phrenic nerve(s)
  - Pleura (parietal, visceral, NOS)
o Sternum
o Sympathetic nerve trunk(s)
o Thoracic duct
o Thymus
o Trachea
o Vertebra(e)

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Aortic (above diaphragm), NOS
  - Peri/para-aortic, NOS
    - Ascending aorta (phrenic)
    - Subaortic (aortico-pulmonary window)
- Carinal (tracheobronchial) (tracheal bifurcation)
- Hilar (bronchopulmonary) (proximal lobar) (pulmonary root)
- Intrapulmonary, NOS
  - Interlobar
  - Lobar
  - Segmental
  - Subsegmental
- Mediastinal, NOS
  - Anterior
  - Posterior (tracheoesophageal)
- Peri/parabronchial
- Pericardial
- Peri/parasophageal
- Peri/paratracheal, NOS
  - Azygos (lower peritracheal)
- Pre- and retrotracheal, NOS:
  - Precarinal
- Pulmonary ligament
- Subcarinal
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
BONE (INCLUDING JOINTS AND ARTICULAR CARTILAGE)

8000-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582, 9700-9701

C400-C403, C408-C414, C418-C419
C400 Long bones of upper limb, scapula and associated joints
C401 Short bones of upper limb and associated joints
C402 Long bones of lower limb and associated joints
C403 Short bones of lower limb and associated joints
C408 Overlapping lesion of bones, joints and articular cartilage of limbs
C409 Bone of limb, NOS
C410 Bones of skull and face and associated joints (excludes mandible C411)
C411 Mandible
C412 Vertebral column
C413 Rib, sternum, clavicle, and associated joints
C414 Pelvic bones, sacrum, coccyx and associated joints
C418 Overlapping lesion of bones, joints and articular cartilage
C419 Bone, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Code 0 is not applicable for this chapter.

Note 4: The cortex of a bone is the dense outer shell that provides strength to the bone; the spongy center of a bone is the cancellous portion. The periosteum of the bone is the fibrous membrane covering of a bone that contains the blood vessels and nerves; the periosteum is similar to the capsule on a visceral organ.

Note 5: Regional lymph nodes are defined as those in the vicinity of the primary tumor.
Note 6: Regional lymph node involvement is rare. If there is no mention of lymph node involvement clinically, assume that lymph nodes are negative.

SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Appendicular (C400-C403, C408-C411, C413, C418-C419)
  - Confined to cortex of bone
  - Extension beyond cortex to periosteum (no break in periosteum)
- Spine (C412)
  - Confined to spine, NOS (number of segments involved not known)
  - Involvement of single or multiple adjacent vertebral segment(s)
- Pelvis (C414)
  - Confined to pelvis, NOS (number of segments involved not known)
  - One to two pelvic segments involved WITHOUT or UNKNOWN if extraosseous extension

2 Regional by direct extension only

- All sites
  - Extraosseous extension (beyond periosteum to surrounding tissues, including adjacent skeletal muscle(s))
- Appendicular (C400-C403, C408-C411, C413, C418-C419)
  - Adjacent bone/cartilage
- Spine (C412)
  - Involvement of multiple non-adjacent vertebral segments
- Pelvis (C414)
  - One to two pelvic segments involved WITH extraosseous extension

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - All bone sites
    - Bone (other than primary site)
    - Lung
  - Appendicular (C400-C403, C408-C411, C413, C418-C419)
    - Discontinuous tumors in the primary bone site
    - Skin
  - Spine (C412)
    - Gross vascular invasion
    - Spinal canal
    - Tumor thrombus in great vessels
  - Pelvis (C414)
    - Encasement of external iliac vessels
    - Gross tumor thrombus in major pelvic vessels
    - Sacral neuroforamen
    - Sacroiliac joint

- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
SOFT TISSUE

GASTROINTESTINAL TUMORS (GIST)

8935-8936 (C000-C539, C571-C809)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: GIST of the corpus, ovary and fallopian tube are collected in the following:

- C540-C549, C559: Corpus Sarcoma
- C569: Ovary
- C570: Fallopian Tube

Note 3: For GIST tumors arising in the tubular organs of the digestive system (Esophagus, Stomach, Small Intestine, Appendix, Colon and Rectum), any extension beyond the muscular wall (e.g. invasion beyond the muscularis propria/muscularis, NOS) into adjacent tissues, sites or organs is no longer considered confined to the site of origin (code 1).

- Extension through the wall, NOS, or through the muscularis propria/muscularis, NOS without further extension would be code 1 (confined to the site of origin).
- Extension through the wall, NOS or through the muscularis propria/muscularis, NOS with any further extension into underlying tissues/fat, organs or structures would be included code 2 or 7 (Adjacent (connective) tissue, NOS or Extension to organs/structures, NOS).

Note 4: See the chapter corresponding to the primary site for information about the site’s anatomy. The corresponding chapter can be used to help determine what the adjacent (connective) tissues, structures or organs are, but the site-specific chapter codes are not to be used to determine whether a GIST tumor is localized, regional or distant.

Note 5: For GIST tumors arising in the Retroperitoneum (C480-C482, C488), refer to the Summary Stage General Instructions for the definition of adjacent (connective) tissue. Refer to the General Instructions to determine whether the GIST tumor involves adjacent tissues, or is confined to the primary site.
Note 6: Nodal metastasis is very rare in gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs) and surgeons generally agree that nodal dissection is not indicated. In the absence of information on regional lymph node status for a localized tumor, assume nodes are negative.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)
   • Confined to site of origin

2 Regional by direct extension only
   • Adjacent (connective) tissue, NOS

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only
   • Regional lymph node(s), NOS
     o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved
   • Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved
   • Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
     o Adherent to organs/structure, NOS
     o Extension to organs/structures, NOS
     o Liver parenchymal nodules
     o Peritoneal nodules
   • Distant lymph node(s), NOS
   • Distant metastasis, NOS
     o Carcinomatosis
     o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
HEART, MEDIASTINUM AND PLEURA

8000-8803, 8810-8921, 8932-8934, 8940-8990, 9000-9016, 9030, 9040-9043, 9045-9137, 9141-9230, 9240-9580, 9582, 9700-9701 (excluding 9050-9053 for C384)

C380-C384, C388
C380 Heart
C381 Anterior mediastinum
C382 Posterior mediastinum
C383 Mediastinum, NOS
C384 Pleura
C388 Overlapping lesion of heart, mediastinum, and pleura

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following schemas for the listed histologies

- 8804-8806, 8930-8931, 8991, 9020, 9044, 9231, 9581: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9050-9053 (C384): Pleural Mesothelioma
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Code 0 is not applicable for this chapter.

SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)
   - Confined to site of origin

2 Regional by direct extension only
   - All sites
     - Adjacent (connective) tissue, NOS
- Adjacent organ(s)/structure(s), NOS
  - Mesentery
  - Serosa
  - Visceral peritoneum
- Heart (C380)
  - Ascending aorta
  - Parietal pericardium
  - Vena cava
- Mediastinum (C381-C383, C388)
  - Descending aorta
  - Esophagus
  - Large (named) artery(ies) or vein(s)
  - Pericardium (parietal, visceral [pericardium], NOS)
  - Phrenic nerve(s)
  - Pleura (parietal, visceral, NOS)
  - Sternum
  - Sympathetic nerve trunk(s)
  - Thoracic duct
  - Thymus
  - Trachea, parietal pleura
  - Vertebral(e)
- Pleura (C384)
  - Chest wall
  - Diaphragm
  - Endothoracic fascia
  - Heart muscle
  - Lung involvement, NOS
  - Mediastinal organs or tissues
  - Pericardium
  - Rib

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- All sites
  - Aortic (above diaphragm), NOS
    - Peri/para-aortic, NOS
      - Ascending aorta (phrenic)
      - Subaortic (aortico-pulmonary window)
  - Carinal (tracheobronchial) (tracheal bifurcation)
  - Mediastinal (anterior, posterior [tracheoesophageal], NOS)
  - Pericardial
  - Peri-/paraesophageal
  - Peri-/paratracheal (lower [azygos], upper, NOS)
  - Pretracheal and retrotracheal (precarinal), NOS
  - Pulmonary ligament
- Subcarinal
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS
- Pleura (C384)
  - Hilar (bronchopulmonary) (proximal lobar) (pulmonary root)
  - Intrapulmonary, NOS
  - Interlobar
  - Lobar
    - Segmental
    - Subsegmental
  - Peri/parabronchial
  - Precarinal

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Pleura
    - Cervical (neck) tissues
    - Contralateral lung
    - Contralateral pleura
    - Intra-abdominal organs
    - Peritoneum
    - Pleural effusion
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Pleura
    - Contralateral/bilateral hilar (bronchopulmonary) (proximal lobar) (pulmonary root)
    - Contralateral/bilateral mediastinal
    - Scalene (inferior deep cervical), ipsilateral or contralateral
    - Supraclavicular (transverse cervical), ipsilateral or contralateral
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
RETROPERITONEUM

C480 (8000-8803, 8810-8921, 8932-8934, 8940-8990, 9000-9016, 9030-9043, 9045-9137, 9141-9230, 9240-9580, 9582, 9700-9701)

C481- C482, C488 (8710-8714, 8800-8803, 8810-8821, 8823-8921, 8932, 8934, 8940-8941, 8951-8959, 8963-8975, 8981-8990, 9010-9016, 9030-9043, 9045, 9051, 9053-9055, 9061-9065, 9072, 9081-9084, 9086, 9101-9105, 9120-9137, 9141-9230, 9240-9580, 9582)

C481-C482, C488 and Sex: 1, 3, 4, 5, 9 (8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8822, 8933, 8950, 8960, 8980, 9000, 9050, 9052, 9060, 9070-9071, 9073, 9080, 9085, 9090-9091, 9100, 9110, 9700-9701)

C480-C482, C488
C480 Retroperitoneum
C481 Specified parts of peritoneum (including omentum and mesentery)
C482 Peritoneum, NOS
C488 Overlapping lesion of retroperitoneum and peritoneum

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- C481-C482, C488 and Sex: 2, 6 (8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8806, 8822, 8930-8931, 8933, 8950, 8960, 8980, 9000, 9050, 9052, 9060, 9070-9071, 9073, 9080, 9085, 9090-9091, 9100, 9110, 9700-9701: Primary Peritoneal Carcinoma
- 8804-8805, 8991, 9020, 9044, 9231, 9581: Soft Tissue
- 8806, 8930-8931 (C480; C481-C488 with Sex 1, 3, 5, 9): Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Code 0 is not applicable for this chapter.
SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)
   • Confined to site of origin

2 Regional by direct extension only
   • Adjacent connective tissue, NOS
   • Adjacent organs/structures, NOS
   • Bone/cartilage
   • Retroperitoneum (C480)
     o Adrenal(s) (suprarenal gland(s))
     o Aorta
     o Colon (ascending and descending)
       o Kidney(s)
     o Pancreas
     o Vena cava
     o Vertebra
   • Peritoneum (C481, C482, C488)
     o Colon (except ascending and descending colon)
     o Esophagus
     o Gallbladder
     o Liver
     o Small intestine
     o Spleen
     o Stomach

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only
   • Intra-abdominal
   • Paracaval
   • Pelvic
   • Subdiaphragmatic
   • Regional lymph node(s), NOS
     o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved
   • Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Peritoneum (C481, C482, C488)
    - Colon (ascending and descending colon)
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant mets WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
SOFT TISSUES AND SARCOMAS

C470-C479, C490-C499: 8000-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582, 9700-9701

C000-C399, C420-C449, C480-C488, C500-C539, C569-C574, C577-C579, C589-C809
(varying histologies between 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582)

• See Summary Stage 2018 Manual, Appendix II by primary site for a detailed listing of primary site/histology combinations for this schema

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

• Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: For C470-C479, C490-C499 only, see the following schemas for the listed histologies

• 8935-8936: GIST
• 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Code 0 is not applicable for this chapter.

SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

• Confined to site of origin
• Deep tumor, NOS
• Superficial tumor, NOS
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent (connective) tissue, NOS
  - Into tissue beyond organ
- Adjacent organ(s)/structure(s), NOS
- Major vessel invasion
- Superficial or deep tumor WITH involvement of
  - adjacent (connective) tissue or adjacent organ(s)/structure(s)
- Abdomen and Thoracic Visceral Organs
  - Mesentery
  - Serosa
  - Visceral peritoneum

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Head and Neck
  - Cervical
- Lip
  - Facial, NOS
  - Buccinator (buccal)
  - Mandibular (submandibular, submaxillary, submental)
  - Nasolabial
  - Parotid (infra-auricular, preauricular)
- Eyelid/canthus
  - Facial (buccinator [buccal], nasolabial, NOS)
  - Mandibular (submandibular, submaxillary, submental)
  - Parotid, NOS (infra-auricular)
- External ear and auditory canal
  - Mastoid (posterior, retro-auricular) (occipital)
  - Preauricular
- Face, Other (cheek, chin, forehead, jaw, nose, and temple):
  - Facial, NOS (buccinator [buccal], nasolabial)
  - Mandibular (submandibular, submaxillary, submental)
  - Parotid (infra-auricular, preauricular)
- Scalp
  - Mastoid (posterior, retro-auricular) (occipital)
  - Parotid (infra-auricular, preauricular)
  - Spinal accessory (posterior cervical)
- Neck
  - Axillary
  - Mandibular
  - Mastoid (posterior, retro-auricular) (occipital)
  - Parotid (infra-auricular, preauricular)
  - Spinal accessory (posterior cervical)
  - Submental (bilateral or contralateral)
- Arm/shoulder
  - Axillary
  - Epitrochlear for hand/forearm
  - Spinal accessory for shoulder
- Leg/hip
  - Femoral (superficial inguinal)
  - Popliteal for heel and calf
- Thorax
  - Hilar (bronchopulmonary) (proximal lobar) (pulmonary root)
  - Mediastinal
- Abdomen
  - Celiac
  - Iliac
  - Para-aortic
- Pelvis
  - Deep inguinal, NOS
  - Rosenmüller or Cloquet node
  - Superficial inguinal (femoral)
- Upper trunk
  - Axillary
  - Cervical
  - Internal mammary
  - Supraclavicular (transverse cervical)
- Lower trunk
  - Superficial inguinal (femoral)
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Head and Neck subsites
    - Brain parenchymal invasion
    - Carotid artery encasement
    - Central compartment visceral
    - Central nervous system involvement via perineural spread
    - Fascial skeleton
    - Orbital invasion
    - Prevertebral muscle invasion
- Pterygoid muscles
- Skull base/dural invasion
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
**SKIN**

**RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THICKNESS, DEPTH OF INVASION, AND CLARK LEVEL**

*(Use Only for Melanoma of the Skin; Vulva, Penis, and Scrotum)*

Below is a guideline for melanoma of the skin for Breslow’s depth and/or Clark’s Level.

*Note*: Clark’s level is not routinely used, but is kept here for historical purposes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary Stage</th>
<th>Breslow’s: Thickness/Depth</th>
<th>Clark’s Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In Situ</td>
<td>In Situ</td>
<td>Level I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Localized</td>
<td>≤ 0.75 mm</td>
<td>Level II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.76 to 1.50 mm</td>
<td>Level III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥1.50 mm</td>
<td>Level IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional Direction Extension</td>
<td>Through entire dermis</td>
<td>Level V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional LN</td>
<td>(See LNs by primary site)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distant</td>
<td>Underlying cartilage, bone, muscle, or metastatic (generalized) skin lesions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SKIN (EXCEPT EYELID)

8000-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8940, 8982

C000-C002, C006, C440, C442-C449
C000 Vermilion border of upper lip (excludes external upper lip)
C001 Vermilion border of lower lip (excludes external lower lip)
C002 Vermilion border of lip, NOS (excludes external lip, NOS)
C006 Commissure of lip
C440 Skin of lip, NOS
C442 External ear
C443 Skin of other and unspecified parts of face
C444 Skin of scalp and neck
C445 Skin of trunk
C446 Skin of upper limb and shoulder
C447 Skin of lower limb and hip
C448 Overlapping lesion of skin
C449 Skin, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8041, 8190, 8247: Merkel Cell Skin
- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8941-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Skin
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma
- 9700-9701: Mycosis Fungoides

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for primary sites C445-C449.

Note 4: Bilateral or contralateral nodes are classified as regional nodes for head, neck, and truncal tumors with bidirectional drainage to primary nodal basins, as shown on
lymphoscintigraphy. Truncal tumors may also drain to both cephalad and caudal primary nodal basins as shown on lymphoscintigraphy.

- Clinical assessment of bilateral/contralateral or cephalad/caudal regional nodal involvement is required for tumors where lymphoscintigraphy is not performed

**Note 5:** Contiguous or secondary nodal basins are the next nodal drainage basins beyond the primary nodal basins and are coded as regional nodes.

**SUMMARY STAGE**

0 **In situ, intraepidermal, intraepithelial, noninvasive**
  - Carcinoma in situ

1 **Localized only (localized, NOS)**
  - Lesion(s) confined to dermis
  - Subcutaneous tissue (through entire dermis)

2 **Regional by direct extension only**
  - All Sites
    - Bone
    - Cartilage
    - Skeletal muscle
    - Underlying cartilage
  - Head and Neck skin primaries only (C000-C002, C006, C440, C442-C444)
    - Bone erosion (minor or NOS)
    - Deep invasion
    - Gross cortical bone/marrow
    - Mandible
    - Maxilla
    - Orbital bone
    - Perineural invasion
    - Skull base foramen
    - Skull base invasion
    - Temporal bone
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

Regional lymph node(s) involved only
- All sites (Single, Multiple, Ipsilateral) (See Code 7 for contralateral or bilateral nodes (except for head and neck skin primaries))
  - Regional lymph node(s), NOS
    - Lymph node(s), NOS
- Head and Neck skin primaries only (C000-C002, C006, C440, C442-C444) (includes contralateral and bilateral nodes)
  - Levels I-VII
  - Axillary (neck only, C444)
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial (buccinator, buccal, nasolabial)
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid (infraauricular, intraparotid, periparotid, preauricular)
  - Retroauricular (mastoid)
  - Retropharyngeal
  - Suboccipital
- Skin of trunk (C445)
  - Upper trunk
    - Axillary
    - Cervical
    - Internal mammary
    - Supraclavicular
  - Lower trunk
  - Superficial inguinal (femoral) (lower trunk only)
- Skin of upper limb and shoulder (C446)
  - Axillary
  - Cervical
  - Epitrochlear for hand/forearm
  - Internal mammary (parasternal)
  - Spinal accessory for shoulder
  - Supraclavicular (transverse cervical)
- Skin of lower limb and hip (C447)
  - Femoral (superficial inguinal)
  - Inguinal
  - Popliteal for heel and calf

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
KAPOSI SARCOMA

9140 Kaposi Sarcoma (C000-C699, C739-C750, C754-C809)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: Kaposi Sarcoma of the brain, central nervous system and intracranial glands is now collected in the following:

- C700, C710-C719: Brain
- C701, C709, C720-C725, C728-C729: CNS Other
- C751-C753: Intracranial Gland

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

Note 4: Code 0 is not applicable for this chapter.

SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only

- Single or multiple lesion(s)
  - Mucosa (e.g., oral cavity, anus, rectum, vagina, vulva)
  - Skin and/or connective tissue
  - Viscera (e.g., pulmonary, gastrointestinal tract, spleen, other)

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Multiple lesion(s)
  - Mucosa plus skin and/or connective tissue
  - Viscera plus mucosa
  - Viscera plus skin and/or connective tissue
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Both clinically enlarged palpable lymph node(s) (adenopathy) and pathologically positive lymph node(s)
- Clinically enlarged palpable lymph node(s) (adenopathy) and either pathologically negative node(s) or no pathological statement
- No clinically enlarged palpable lymph node(s) (adenopathy) but pathologically positive lymph node(s)
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Multiple lesions in all THREE of following: viscera plus mucosa plus skin and/or connective tissue
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
MERKEL CELL SKIN

8041, 8190, 8247 (C000-C006, C008-C009, C440-C449, C510-C512, C518-C519, C600-C602, C608-C609, C632)
8190, 8247 (C809)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: Merkel cell carcinoma presenting in nodal or visceral site with primary site unknown is coded to C449, Skin, NOS.

Note 3: Isolated tumor cells (ITCs) are defined as single tumor cells or small clusters not greater than 0.2 mm, usually detected by immunohistochemical (IHC) or molecular methods. ITCs do not usually show evidence of malignant activity (e.g., proliferation or stromal reaction).

- Lymph nodes with isolated tumor cells (ITCs) are counted as positive lymph nodes

Note 4: In transit metastasis is defined as a tumor distinct from the primary lesion and located either between the primary lesion and the draining regional lymph node(s) or distal to the primary lesion. In transit metastasis with positive lymph node(s) are coded under regional lymph nodes.

- In-transit metastasis are counted as positive nodes

Note 5: Bilateral or contralateral nodes are classified as regional nodes for head, neck, and truncal tumors with bidirectional drainage to primary nodal basins, as shown on lymphoscintigraphy. Truncal tumors may also drain to both cephalad and caudal primary nodal basins as shown on lymphoscintigraphy.

- Clinical assessment of bilateral/contralateral or cephalad/caudal regional nodal involvement is required for tumors where lymphoscintigraphy is not performed

Note 6: Contiguous or secondary nodal basins are the next nodal drainage basins beyond the primary nodal basins and are coded as regional nodes.
SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepidermal, intraepithelial, noninvasive

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to site of origin
- Lesion(s) confined to dermis
- Subcutaneous tissue (through entire dermis)

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Bone
- Cartilage
- Fascia
- Skeletal muscle

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

Regional lymph node(s) involved only
- All sites (Single, Multiple, Ipsilateral) (See Code 7 for contralateral or bilateral nodes (except for head and neck skin primaries))
  - Isolated tumor cells (ITCs) WITH or WITHOUT regional lymph node involvement
  - In-transit mets WITH or WITHOUT regional lymph node involvement
  - Regional lymph node(s), NOS
    - Lymph node(s), NOS
- Head and Neck skin primaries only (C000-C002, C006, C440, C442-C444) (includes contralateral and bilateral nodes)
  - Levels I-VII
  - Axillary (neck only, C444)
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial (buccinator, buccal, nasolabial)
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid (infraauricular, intraparotid, periparotid, preauricular)
  - Retroauricular (mastoid)
  - Retropharyngeal
  - Suboccipital
- Skin of trunk (C445)
  - Upper trunk
    - Axillary
    - Cervical
- Internal mammary
  - Supraclavicular
    - Lower trunk
      - Superficial inguinal (femoral)
- Skin of upper limb and shoulder (C446)
  - Axillary
  - Cervical
  - Epitrochlear for hand/forearm
  - Internal mammary (parasternal)
  - Spinal accessory for shoulder
  - Supraclavicular (transverse cervical)
- Skin of lower limb and hip (C447)
  - Femoral (superficial inguinal)
  - Inguinal
  - Popliteal for heel and calf
- Vulva (C510-C512, C518-C519)
  - Deep inguinal, NOS
  - Femoral
  - Inguinal, NOS
  - Inguino femoral (groin)
  - Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)
  - Superficial inguinal (femoral)
- Penis (C600-C602, C608-C609)
  - Iliac, NOS
    - External
    - Internal (hypogastric, obturator)
  - Inguinal, NOS
    - Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)
    - Superficial [femoral]
  - Pelvic, NOS
- Scrotum (C632)
  - Iliac, NOS
    - External
    - Internal (hypogastric), NOS
      - Obturator
  - Inguinal, NOS
    - Deep inguinal, NOS
      - Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)
      - Superficial inguinal (femoral)

**4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved**

- Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Bone
  - Cartilage
  - Fascia
  - Lung
  - Other visceral sites
  - Skeletal muscle (excluding direct extension)
  - Skin or subcutaneous tissue beyond regional lymph nodes
  - Underlying cartilage
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Axillary (lower trunk)
  - Femoral (cephalad/caudal) (upper trunk)
  - Iliac (leg/hip)
  - Supraclavicular (head and neck, arm/shoulder)
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
MELANOMA SKIN

8720-8790 (C000-C002, C006, C440-C449, C500, C510-C512, C518-C519, C600-C602, C608-C609, C632)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: For melanoma of sites other than those above

- C003-C005, C008-C009, C090-C148, C300-C329: See Melanoma Head and Neck
- C690: See Melanoma Conjunctiva
- C693, C694: See Melanoma Uvea
- For all other sites, use the appropriate site-specific schema

Note 3: If there is a discrepancy between the Clark level and the pathological description of extent (invasion into the layers of the dermis), use the higher (more extensive) code.

Note 4: Code the greatest extent of invasion from any procedure performed on the lesion, whether it is described as a biopsy or an excision. For example, if a punch biopsy with involvement of Clark level IV is followed by a re-excision with residual tumor involving Clark level II, code 2 (Clark level IV).

Note 5: If a Breslow’s depth is given in the pathology report and there is no other indication of involvement, the following guidelines may be used (Note: If a physician documents a different Clark's Level then provided by these guidelines, go with the physician's Clark Level)

- In situ: Level 1
- Localized
  - Level II (< 0.75 mm Breslow’s Depth)
  - Level III (0.76 mm to 1.50 mm Breslow’s Depth)
  - Level IV (> 1.50 mm Breslow’s Depth)
- Regional
  - Level V: Through entire dermis
Note 6: Isolated tumor cells (ITCs) are defined as single tumor cells or small clusters not greater than 0.2 mm, usually detected by immunohistochemical (IHC) or molecular methods. ITCs do not usually show evidence of malignant activity (e.g., proliferation or stromal reaction).

- Lymph nodes with isolated tumor cells (ITCs) are counted as positive lymph nodes

Note 7: In-transit, satellite, and/or microsatellite metastasis are metastasis that have occurred via lymphatic or angiolymphatic spread. Satellite nodules are subcutaneous metastasis that occur within 2 cm of the primary tumor. Microsatellite metastasis are microscopic cutaneous metastasis found adjacent or deep to a primary melanoma tumor.

- In-transit, satellite, and/or microsatellite metastasis are counted as positive nodes

Note 8: Bilateral or contralateral nodes are classified as regional nodes for head, neck, and truncal tumors with bidirectional drainage to primary nodal basins, as shown on lymphoscintigraphy. Truncal tumors may also drain to both cephalad and caudal primary nodal basins as shown on lymphoscintigraphy.

- Clinical assessment of bilateral/contralateral or cephalad/caudal regional nodal involvement is required for tumors where lymphoscintigraphy is not performed

Note 9: Contiguous or secondary nodal basins are the next nodal drainage basins beyond the primary nodal basins and are coded as regional nodes.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

- Basement membrane of the epidermis is intact
- In situ, intraepidermal, intraepithelial, noninvasive
  - Clark level I

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Papillary dermis invaded
  - Clark level II
- Papillary- reticular dermal interface invaded
  - Clark level III
- Reticular dermis invaded
  - Clark level IV
- Skin/dermis, NOS
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Subcutaneous tissue (through entire dermis)
  - Clark level V

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- All sites (Single, Multiple, Ipsilateral) (See Code 7 for contralateral or bilateral nodes (except for head and neck skin primaries))
  - Isolated tumor cells (ITCs) WITH or WITHOUT regional lymph node involvement
  - In-transit, satellite, and/or microsatellite metastasis WITH or WITHOUT regional lymph node involvement
  - Regional lymph node(s), NOS
    - Lymph node(s), NOS
- Head and Neck skin primaries only (C000-C002, C006, C440, C442-C444) (includes contralateral and bilateral nodes)
  - Levels I-VII
  - Axillary (neck only, C444)
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Deep cervical, NOS
  - Facial (buccinator, buccal, nasolabial)
  - Internal jugular, NOS
  - Parapharyngeal
  - Parotid (infraauricular, intraparotid, periparotid, preauricular)
  - Retroauricular (mastoid)
  - Retropharyngeal
  - Suboccipital
- Skin of trunk (C445)
  - Upper trunk
    - Axillary
    - Cervical
    - Internal mammary
    - Supraclavicular
  - Lower trunk
    - Superficial inguinal (femoral)
- Skin of upper limb and shoulder (C446)
  - Axillary
  - Cervical
  - Epitrochlear for hand/forearm
  - Internal mammary (parasternal)
  - Spinal accessory for shoulder
  - Supraclavicular (transverse cervical)
- Skin of lower limb and hip (C447)
  - Femoral (superficial inguinal)
Inguinal

- Popliteal for heel and calf

- Vulva (C510-C512, C518-C519)
  - Deep inguinal, NOS
  - Femoral
  - Inguinal, NOS
  - Inguinofemoral (groin)
  - Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)
  - Superficial inguinal (femoral)

- Penis (C600-C602, C608-C609)
  - Iliac, NOS
    - External
    - Internal (hypogastric, obturator)
  - Inguinal, NOS
    - Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)
    - Superficial [femoral]
  - Pelvic, NOS

- Scrotum (C632)
  - Iliac, NOS
    - External
    - Internal (hypogastric), NOS
      - Obturator
  - Inguinal, NOS
    - Deep inguinal, NOS
      - Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)
      - Superficial inguinal (femoral)

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Bone
  - Central nervous system (CNS)
  - Lung
  - Skeletal muscle (including direct extension)
  - Skin or subcutaneous tissue beyond regional lymph nodes
  - Underlying cartilage
  - Visceral metastasis, NOS

- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Axillary (lower trunk)
  - Femoral (cephalad/caudal) (upper trunk)
  - Iliac (leg/hip)

- Distant metastasis, NOS
- Carcinomatosis
- Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
**BREAST**

8000-8700, 8720-8790 [except C500], 8982-8983, 9700-9701

C500-C506, C508-C509
C500 Nipple
C501 Central portion of breast
C502 Upper-inner quadrant of breast
C503 Lower-inner quadrant of breast
C504 Upper-outer quadrant of breast
C505 Lower-outer quadrant of breast
C506 Axillary Tail of breast
C508 Overlapping lesion of breast
C509 Breast, NOS

**Note 1:** The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

**Note 2:** See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8720-8790: Melanoma Skin (C500 only)
- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8990-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

**Note 3:** Changes such as dimpling of the skin, tethering, and nipple retraction are caused by tension on Cooper’s ligament(s), not by actual skin involvement. They do not alter the classification.

**Note 4:** Adherence, attachment, fixation, induration, and thickening are clinical evidence of extension to skin or subcutaneous tissue; assign code 2 for regional extension.

**Note 5:** “Fixation, NOS” is involvement of pectoralis muscle; assign code 2 for regional extension.
**Note 6:** For a clinical description of inflammation, erythema, edema, peau d’orange, or other terms describing skin changes with or without a stated diagnosis of inflammatory carcinoma, assign code 2 for regional extension.

**Note 7:** Isolated tumor cells (ITCs) are defined as single tumor cells or small clusters not greater than 0.2 mm, usually detected by immunohistochemical (IHC) or molecular methods. ITCs do not usually show evidence of malignant activity (e.g., proliferation or stromal reaction). RT-PCR is a molecular method designed to find evidence of unique tumor or epithelial cell markers.

- Lymph nodes with ITCs only or positive molecular findings (RT-PCR), or both ITCs and RT-PCR are not counted as positive nodes for Summary Stage

**Note 8:** If the pathology report indicates that nodes are positive but size of the metastases is not stated, assume the metastases are greater than 0.2 mm and code the lymph nodes as positive in this field.

**Note 9:** Bone marrow micrometastasis, circulating tumor cells (CTCs) or disseminated tumor cells and clusters (DTCs) that are less than or equal to 0.2 mm are negative for metastasis in Summary Stage.

**SUMMARY STAGE**

**0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive**

- In situ: noninfiltrating; intraepithelial
- Intraductal WITHOUT infiltration
- Lobular neoplasia, grade 3 (LIN 3)
- Paget disease, in situ

**1 Localized only (localized, NOS)**

- Confined to breast tissue and fat including nipple and/or areola
- Paget disease WITH or WITHOUT underlying tumor

**2 Regional by direct extension only**

- Attachment or fixation to pectoral muscle(s) or underlying tumor
- Chest wall
- Deep fixation
- Extensive skin involvement WITH or WITHOUT dermal lymphatic filtration
  - Edema of skin
  - En cuirasse
  - Erythema
  - Inflammation of skin
- Lenticular nodule(s)
- Peau d'orange ("pigskin")
- Satellite nodules
- Skin edema
- Ulceration of skin of breast
- Inflammatory carcinoma, NOS
- Intercostal or serratus anterior muscle(s)
- Local infiltration of dermal lymphatics adjacent to primary tumor involving skin by direct extension
- Pectoral fascia or muscle(s)
- Rib(s)
- Subcutaneous tissue
- Skin infiltration of primary breast including skin of nipple and/or areola

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Axillary, NOS (ipsilateral)
  - Level I (low-axilla) (low) (superficial), NOS [adjacent to tail of breast]
    - Anterior (pectoral)
    - Lateral (brachial)
    - Posterior (subscapular)
  - Level II (mid-axilla) (central), NOS
    - Interpectoral (Rotter’s)
  - Level III (high) (deep), NOS
    - Apical (subclavian)
    - Axillary vein
- Fixed/matted axillary (level I and II) (ipsilateral)
- Infracavicular (subclavicular) (ipsilateral)
- Internal mammary (parasternal) (ipsilateral)
- Intramammary (ipsilateral)
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Adrenal (suprarenal) gland
  - Bone other than adjacent rib
  - Contralateral (opposite) breast-if stated as metastatic
- Lung
- Ovary
- Satellite nodule(s) in skin other than primary breast
- Skin over
  - Axilla
  - Contralateral (opposite) breast
  - Sternum
  - Upper abdomen
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Axillary (contralateral or bilateral)
  - Cervical, NOS
  - Fixed/matted axillary (level I and II) (contralateral or bilateral)
  - Infracavicular (subclavicular) (contralateral or bilateral)
  - Internal mammary (parasternal) (contralateral or bilateral)
  - Intramammary (contralateral or bilateral)
  - Supraclavicular (transverse cervical) (ipsilateral, contralateral or bilateral)
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
FEMALE GENITAL SYSTEM

VULVA

8000-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 9020, 9071

C510-C512, C518-C519
C510 Labium majus
C511 Labium minus
C512 Clitoris
C518 Overlapping lesion of vulva
C519 Vulva, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8041, 8190, 8247: Merkel Cell Skin
- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9016, 9030-9070, 9072-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Skin
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma
- 9700-9701: Mycosis Fungoides

Note 3: Basal and squamous cell carcinomas of the skin of the vulva are coded to C519 and are reportable; basal and squamous carcinomas of the skin of the perineum would be coded to C445 and would not be reportable.

Note 4: Isolated tumor cells (ITCs) are defined as single tumor cells or small clusters not greater than 0.2 mm, usually detected by immunohistochemical (IHC) or molecular methods. ITCs do not usually show evidence of malignant activity (e.g., proliferation or stromal reaction).

- Lymph nodes with ITCs only are not counted as positive nodes for Summary Stage
SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)
   • FIGO Stage IA, IB, I [NOS]
     o Invasive carcinoma WITH or WITHOUT stromal invasion confined to
       ▪ Musculature
       ▪ Submucosa
       ▪ Vulva including skin

2 Regional by direct extension only
   • FIGO Stage II
     o Adjacent perineal structures
     o Anus
     o Bladder wall or bladder, NOS excluding mucosa
     o Perianal skin
     o Rectal wall or rectum, NOS excluding mucosa
     o Urethra, NOS
       ▪ Lower/distal third of urethra
     o Vagina, NOS
     o Vulva and perineum involved WITH or WITHOUT stromal invasion

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only
   • FIGO Stage IIIA, IIIB, IIIC, III [NOS]
     o Deep inguinal, NOS
     o Femoral
     o Inguinal, NOS
     o Inguinofemoral (groin)
     o Node of Cloquet or Rosenmüller (highest deep inguinal)
     o Superficial inguinal (femoral)
     o Regional lymph node(s), NOS
       ▪ Lymph node(s), NOS
   • FIGO Stage IVA based on regional lymph node involvement

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved
   • Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - FIGO Stage IVA, IVB, IV [NOS]
    - Bladder mucosa
    - Fixed to pubic bone (pelvic bone)
    - Perineal body
    - Rectal mucosa
    - Urethra: upper/proximal two-thirds

- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Common iliac
  - External iliac
  - Internal iliac (hypogastric)
  - Obturator
  - Pelvic, NOS

- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
**VAGINA**

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8933, 8980, 9071, 9110, 9700-9701

C529
C529 Vagina, NOS

**Note 1:** The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

**Note 2:** See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8932, 8934, 8940-8975, 8981-9070, 9072-9105, 9120-9137, 9140-9582: *Soft Tissue*
- 8935-8936: *GIST*
- 9140: *Kaposi Sarcoma*

**Note 3:** Isolated tumor cells (ITCs) are defined as single tumor cells or small clusters not greater than 0.2 mm, usually detected by immunohistochemical (IHC) or molecular methods. ITCs do not usually show evidence of malignant activity (e.g., proliferation or stromal reaction).

- Lymph nodes with ITCs only are not counted as positive nodes for Summary Stage

**SUMMARY STAGE**

0 **In situ:** noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 **Localized only (localized, NOS)**

- FIGO Stage I
  - Confined to vagina
  - Musculature involved
  - Submucosa (stroma) (vagina)
2 Regional by direct extension only

- FIGO Stage II
  - Bladder wall or bladder, NOS (excluding mucosa)
  - Cervix
  - Cul de sac (rectouterine pouch)
  - Extension to lower third of the vagina (from proximal vagina)
  - “Frozen pelvis” (clinically diagnosed)
  - Hydronephrosis or nonfunctioning kidney
  - Parametrium
  - Paravaginal soft tissue
  - Pelvic wall
    - Fascia
    - Muscle
    - Neurovascular structures
    - Skeletal portions of bony pelvis
  - Rectal wall or rectum, NOS excluding mucosa
  - Rectovaginal septum
  - Vesicovaginal septum
  - Vulva

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Lower third of vagina
  - Femoral [superficial inguinal]
  - Inguinal, NOS
- Upper two thirds of vagina
  - Iliac (common, external, NOS)
  - Internal iliac (hypogastric)
  - Middle sacral (promontorial) (Gerota’s node)
  - Obturator
  - Para-aortic
  - Parametrial
  - Pelvic, NOS
  - Presacral
  - Sacral
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - FIGO Stage IVA
    - Bladder mucosa (excluding bullous edema)
    - Extension beyond true pelvis
    - Rectal mucosa
    - Urethra
  - Distant lymph node(s), NOS
    - All sites
      - Aortic (lateral [lumbar], para-aortic, periaortic, NOS)
      - Retroperitoneal, NOS
    - Lower third of vagina
      - Iliac (common, external, NOS)
      - Internal iliac (hypogastric)
      - Middle sacral (promontorial) (Gerota’s node)
      - Obturator
      - Para-aortic
      - Parametrial
      - Pelvic, NOS
      - Presacral
      - Sacral
      - Superficial inguinal (femoral)
    - Upper two thirds of vagina
      - Inguinal, NOS

- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
CERVIX

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8805, 8933, 8980, 9110, 9581, 9700-9701

C530-C531, C538-C539
C530 Endocervix
C531 Exocervix
C538 Overlapping lesion of cervix
C539 Cervix uteri

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8804, 8806-8932, 8934, 8940-8975, 8981-9105, 9120-9137, 9141-9580, 9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Isolated tumor cells (ITCs) are defined as single tumor cells or small clusters not greater than 0.2 mm, usually detected by immunohistochemical (IHC) or molecular methods. ITCs do not usually show evidence of malignant activity (e.g., proliferation or stromal reaction).

- Lymph nodes with ITCs only are not counted as positive nodes for Summary Stage

Note 4: Para-aortic nodes are now regional instead of distant.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

- Cancer in situ WITH endocervical gland involvement
- Cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) Grade III
- Preinvasive
1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- FIGO Stage IA1
  - Measured stromal invasion 3.0 mm or less and 7.0 mm or less in horizontal spread
- FIGO Stage IA2
  - Measured stromal invasion 3.1 mm to 5.0 mm with a horizontal spread of 7.0 mm or less
- FIGO Stage IA [NOS]
  - Measured stromal invasion 5.0 mm or less measured from the base of the epithelium AND horizontal spread of 7.0 mm or less
- FIGO Stage IB
- FIGO Stage I [NOS]
  - Clinically visible lesion (macroscopic), including superficial invasion
  - Confined to cervix uteri or uterus, NOS, except corpus uteri, NOS
    - (Not clinically visible or unknown if clinically visible)

2 Regional by direct extension only

- FIGO Stage IIA, IIB, II [NOS]
  - Confined to corpus uteri, size, depth and horizontal spread unknown
  - Corpus uteri, NOS
  - Cul de sac (rectouterine pouch)
  - Invasion beyond uterus, NOS
  - Ligament(s) (broad, cardinal, uterosacral)
  - Parametrial (paracervical soft tissue) invasion
  - Upper two-thirds of vagina including fornices
  - Vagina, NOS
  - Vaginal wall, NOS
- FIGO Stage IIIA
  - Bladder wall
  - Bladder, NOS excluding mucosa
  - Bullous edema of bladder mucosa
  - Lower third of vagina
  - Rectal wall
  - Rectum, NOS excluding mucosa
  - Ureter, intra- and extramural
  - Vagina, lower third (not extending to pelvic wall)
  - Vulva
- FIGO Stage IIIB
  - Described clinically as frozen pelvis
  - Hydronephrosis or nonfunctioning kidney
  - Pelvic wall(s)
- FIGO Stage III [NOS]
  - Fallopian tube(s)
  - Ovary(ies)
  - Urethra
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Aortic
  - Lateral aortic
  - Para-aortic
  - Periaortic
- Iliac, NOS
  - Common
  - External
  - Internal (hypogastric) (obturator), NOS
- Paracervical
- Parametrial
- Pelvic, NOS
- Sacral, NOS
  - Lateral (laterosacral)
  - Middle (promontorial) (Gerota’s node)
  - Presacral
  - Uterosacral
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Bladder mucosa
  - Rectal mucosa
  - Sigmoid colon
  - Small intestine
  - FIGO Stage IVA, IVB, IV [NOS]
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Inguinal
  - Mediastinal
  - Scalene
  - Supraclavicular
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
The layers of the corpus include:

1. The **EPITHELIAL LAYER** contains no blood vessels or lymphatics.
2. The **BASEMENT MEMBRANE**, a sheet of extracellular material, functions as a filtration barrier and a boundary involved in generating and maintaining tissue structure.
3. The **LAMINA PROPRIA**, composed of areolar connective tissue, contains blood vessels, nerves, and, in some regions, glands. Once tumor has broken through the basement membrane into the lamina propria, it can spread by way of the lymphatics and blood vessels to other parts of the body.
4. There is NO **MUSCULARIS MUCOSAE** or **SUBMUCOSA** in the endometrium.
5. The **MYOMETRIUM** (muscularis) is composed of three layers of smooth muscle fibers; it constitutes the wall of the organ.
6. The **SEROSA**, the outermost layer covering the corpus uteri, is a serous membrane, part of the visceral peritoneum.

### DISTINGUISHING “IN SITU” AND “LOCALIZED” TUMORS FOR THE CORPUS UTERI

Careful attention must be given to the use of the term “confined to endometrium” for corpus uterus.

1. Determine if the tumor is confined to the columnar epithelium, in which case it is in situ, OR
2. If the tumor has penetrated the basement membrane to invade the stroma (lamina propria), in which case it is assigned 1 (localized).
CORPUS CARCINOMA AND CARCINOSARCOMA

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8950, 8980, 9700-9701

C540-C543, C548-C549, C559
C540 Isthmus uteri
C541 Endometrium
C542 Myometrium
C543 Fundus uteri
C548 Overlapping lesion of corpus uteri
C549 Corpus uteri
C559 Uterus, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following schemas for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8941, 8951-8975, 8981-9137, 9141-9582: Corpus Sarcoma
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Isolated tumor cells (ITCs) are defined as single tumor cells or small clusters not greater than 0.2 mm, usually detected by immunohistochemical (IHC) or molecular methods. ITCs do not usually show evidence of malignant activity (e.g., proliferation or stromal reaction).

- Lymph nodes with ITCs only are not counted as positive nodes for Summary Stage

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive, preinvasive

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- FIGO Stage IA
  - Invasion of inner half of myometrium
- FIGO Stage IB
  - Invasion of outer half of myometrium
• FIGO Stage I [NOS]
  o Confined to uterus, NOS
  o Invasion of myometrium, NOS
  o Invasive cancer confined to corpus uteri

2 Regional by direct extension only
• FIGO Stage II
  o Cervix uteri, NOS
  o Cervical stromal invasion
  o Endocervical glandular involvement
  o Tumor invading the stromal connective tissue of the cervix but not extending beyond the uterus
• FIGO Stage IIIA
  o Adnexa (direct extension or metastasis)
  o Fallopian tube(s)
  o Ovary(ies)
  o Serosa, NOS
  o Tunica serosa (visceral peritoneum of corpus, serosa covering the corpus)
  o Tunica serosa of corpus
• FIGO Stage IIIB
  o Bladder, NOS (excluding mucosa)
  o Described clinically as "frozen pelvis", NOS
  o Ligaments (broad, round, uterosacral)
  o Parametrium, NOS
  o Parietal serosa of pelvic wall
  o Pelvic wall(s)
  o Peritoneal cytology positive for malignant cells
  o Rectal wall
  o Rectum, NOS excluding mucosa
  o Ureter
  o Vagina (direct extension or metastasis)
  o Visceral peritoneum of pelvic organs excluding serosa of corpus
  o Vulva
• FIGO Stage III [NOS]

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only
• Aortic (lateral [lumbar], Periaortic, NOS)
• Iliac (external, internal [hypogastric], NOS)
• Lateral (laterosacral)
• Middle (promontorial) (Gerota’s node)
• Obturator
• Para-aortic
• Paracervical
• Parametrial
• Pelvic, NOS
• Presacral
• Sacral
• Uterosacral
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

• Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  o FIGO Stage IVA
    ▪ Abdominal serosa (visceral or parietal peritoneum of abdomen)
    ▪ Bladder mucosa (excluding bullous edema)
    ▪ Bowel mucosa
    ▪ Cul de sac (rectouterine pouch or Pouch of Douglas)
    ▪ Sigmoid colon
    ▪ Small intestine
  o FIGO Stage IVB
    ▪ Bone
    ▪ Intraperitoneal disease
    ▪ Liver
    ▪ Lung
  o FIGO Stage IV [NOS]
• Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  o Deep inguinal, NOS
    ▪ Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)
  o Inguinal, NOS
  o Superficial inguinal (femoral)
• Distant metastasis, NOS
  o Carcinomatosis
  o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
CORPUS SARCOMA

8710-8714, 8800-8941, 8951-8975, 8981-9137, 9141-9582
C540-C543, C548-C549, C559
C540 Isthmus uteri
C541 Endometrium
C542 Myometrium
C543 Fundus uteri
C548 Overlapping lesion of corpus uteri
C549 Corpus uteri
C559 Uterus, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: Code 0 is not applicable for this chapter.

Note 3: Isolated tumor cells (ITCs) are defined as single tumor cells or small clusters not greater than 0.2 mm, usually detected by immunohistochemical (IHC) or molecular methods. ITCs do not usually show evidence of malignant activity (e.g., proliferation or stromal reaction).

- Lymph nodes with ITCs only are not counted as positive nodes for Summary Stage

SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- FIGO Stage IA
  - Confined to endometrium or endocervix
  - (Glandular, stromal, or both)
- FIGO Stage IB
  - Invasion of inner half of myometrium
  - Tumor invades less than one-half of myometrium
- FIGO Stage IC
  - Invasion of outer half of myometrium
  - Tumor invades one-half or more of myometrium
• FIGO Stage I [NOS]
  o Invasion of myometrium, NOS
  o Invasive cancer confined to corpus uteri
  o Tunica serosa of the visceral peritoneum (serosa covering the corpus)

2 Regional by direct extension only

• FIGO Stage IIA
  o Cervix uteri, NOS, but not beyond uterus
  o Confined to endocervix (Glandular, stromal, or both)
  o Extension or metastasis within true pelvis
    ▪ Adnexa, NOS
    ▪ Fallopian tube(s)
    ▪ Ligaments (broad, round, uterosacral)
    ▪ Ovary(ies)
  o Invasion of myometrium WITH involvement of endocervix
    ▪ Parametrium
  o Visceral peritoneum of pelvic organs excluding serosa of corpus uteri

• FIGO Stage IIB
  o Described clinically as "frozen pelvis", NOS
  o Parietal serosa of pelvic cavity
  o Pelvic wall(s)
  o Ureter
  o Vagina
  o Vulva

• FIGO Stage II [NOS]
  o Bladder wall
  o Bladder, NOS excluding mucosa
  o Extension beyond uterus, within pelvis, NOS
  o Peritoneal cytology positive for malignant cells
  o Rectal wall
  o Rectum, NOS excluding mucosa

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

• Aortic (lateral [lumbar], Periaortic, NOS)
• Iliac (external, internal [hypogastric], NOS)
• Lateral (laterosacral)
• Middle (promontorial) (Gerota’s node)
• Obturator
• Para-aortic
• Paracervical
• Parametrial
• Pelvic, NOS
• Presacral
• Sacral
• Uterosacral
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

• Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  o Cul de sac (rectouterine pouch)
  o FIGO Stage IIIA, IIIB, III [NOS]
    ▪ Abdominal serosa (visceral or parietal peritoneum of abdomen)
    ▪ Infiltration of abdominal tissues
    ▪ Sigmoid colon
    ▪ Small intestine
    ▪ Other abdominal structures
  o FIGO Stage IVA, IVB, IV [NOS]
• Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  o Deep inguinal, NOS
    ▪ Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)
  o Inguinal, NOS
  o Superficial inguinal (femoral)
• Distant metastasis, NOS
  o Carcinomatosis
  o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
OVARY AND PRIMARY PERITONEAL CARCINOMA

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8806, 8822, 8930-8931, 8933, 8950, 8960, 8980, 9000, 9050, 9052, 9060, 9070-9071, 9073, 9080, 9085, 9090-9091, 9100, 9110, 9700-9701

C569: 8810, 8815, 8825, 8890, 8935-8936

C481-C482, C488, C569
C481 Specified parts of peritoneum (female only)
C482 Peritoneum (female only)
C488 Overlapping lesion of retroperitoneum and peritoneum (female only)
C569 Ovary

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- C481-C482, C488 and Sex: 1, 3, 5, 9 (8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8822, 8933, 8950, 8960, 8980, 9000, 9050, 9052, 9060, 9070-9071, 9073, 9080, 9085, 9090-9091, 9100, 9110, 9700-9701): Retroperitoneum
- C481-C482, C488 and Sex: 1, 3, 5, 9 (8806, 8930-8931): Soft Tissue
- C481-C482, C488 (8804-8805, 8891, 9020, 9044, 9231, 9581): Soft Tissue
- C481-C482, C488 (8935-8936): GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Ascites, NOS is considered negative.
Note 4: Isolated tumor cells (ITCs) are defined as single tumor cells or small clusters not greater than 0.2 mm, usually detected by immunohistochemical (IHC) or molecular methods. ITCs do not usually show evidence of malignant activity (e.g., proliferation or stromal reaction).

- Lymph nodes with ITCs only are not counted as positive nodes for Summary Stage

Note 5: Peritoneal implants outside the pelvis must be microscopically confirmed. Peritoneal implants may also be called seeding, salting, talcum powder appearance, or studding.

Note 6: If implants are mentioned, determine whether they are in the pelvis or in the abdomen and code appropriately to regional by direct extension or to distant. If not stated, code to distant.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

- Limited to tubal mucosa
- Preinvasive

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- FIGO Stage IA
  - Limited to one ovary (capsule intact)
- FIGO Stage IB
  - Limited to both ovaries (capsule intact)
- FIGO Stage IC1
  - Limited to both ovaries WITH surgical spill
- FIGO Stage I, IC (does not include IC2, IC3)
  - Limited to one or both ovary(ies), NOS
- Localized primary peritoneal cancer
  - (Primary sites C481, C482, C488)

2 Regional by direct extension only

- FIGO Stage IC2
  - Limited to one or both ovaries
    - WITH capsule ruptured before surgery
    - OR tumor on ovarian surface
- FIGO Stage IC3
  - Malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings
    - WITH or WITHOUT capsule rupture
- FIGO Stage IIA
  - Extension to or implants on
    - Adnexa
• Fallopian tube
• Uterus, NOS
• FIGO Stage IIB
  o Extension to or implants on
    • Adjacent peritoneum
    • Bladder
    • Bladder serosa
    • Cul de sac (rectouterine pouch)
    • Ligament(s): (broad, ovarian, round, suspensory)
    • Mesovarium
    • Parametrium
    • Rectosigmoid
    • Rectum
    • Sigmoid colon (including sigmoid mesentery)
    • Ureter (pelvic portion)
• FIGO Stage II [NOS]
  o Confined to pelvis
  o Tumor involves one or both ovaries
    • WITH pelvic extension, NOS (below pelvic brim)
• FIGO Stage IIIA
  o Microscopic peritoneal implants beyond pelvis
    • Includes peritoneal surface/capsule of liver

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

• Aortic, NOS
  o Lateral (lumbar)
  o Para-aortic
  o Periaortic
• Iliac, NOS
  o Common
  o External
  o Internal (hypogastric, obturator, NOS)
• Intra-abdominal
• Lateral sacral (laterosacral)
• Pelvic, NOS
• Retroperitoneal, NOS
• Subdiaphragmatic (primary peritoneal carcinoma)
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - FIGO Stage IIIB
    - Macroscopic peritoneal implants beyond pelvis
    - Less than or equal to 2 cm in diameter
    - Includes peritoneal surface of liver
  - FIGO Stage IIIC
    - Macroscopic peritoneal implants beyond pelvis
    - Greater than 2 cm in diameter
    - Includes peritoneal surface of liver (liver capsule)
    - Includes tumor extension to liver and spleen WITHOUT parenchymal involvement of either organ
  - FIGO Stage III [NOS]
    - One or both ovaries involved
    - OR primary peritoneal cancer
    - WITH microscopic confirmed peritoneal metastasis outside of the pelvis
    - Peritoneal implants, NOS
  - FIGO Stage IVA
    - Pleural effusion with positive cytology
  - FIGO Stage IVB
    - Extra-abdominal organs
    - Liver parenchymal
    - Spleen parenchymal
    - Transmural involvement of intestine
  - FIGO Stage IV [NOS]

- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Inguinal

- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis (involvement of multiple parenchymal organs
    - OR diffuse involvement of multiple non-abdominal organs)
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
FALLOPIAN TUBE

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8806, 8810, 8815, 8822, 8825, 8890, 8930-8931, 8933, 8935-8936, 8950, 8960, 8980, 9000, 9050, 9052, 9060, 9070-9071, 9073, 9080, 9085, 9090-9091, 9100, 9110, 9700-9701

C570
C570 Fallopian tube

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following schemas for the listed histologies

- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Ascites, NOS is considered negative.

Note 4: Isolated tumor cells (ITCs) are defined as single tumor cells or small clusters not greater than 0.2 mm, usually detected by immunohistochemical (IHC) or molecular methods. ITCs do not usually show evidence of malignant activity (e.g., proliferation or stromal reaction).

- Lymph nodes with ITCs only are not counted as positive nodes for Summary Stage

Note 5: If implants are mentioned, determine whether they are in the pelvis or in the abdomen and code appropriately to regional by direct extension or to distant. If not stated, code to distant.
SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

- Limited to tubal mucosa
- Preinvasive

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- FIGO Stage IA
  - Limited to one fallopian tube
- FIGO Stage IB
  - Limited to both fallopian tubes
- FIGO Stage IC1
  - Limited to both fallopian tubes WITH surgical spill
- FIGO Stage IC [NOS] (does not include IC2, IC3)
  - Limited to one or both fallopian tube(s), NOS
- FIGO Stage I [NOS]

2 Regional by direct extension only

- FIGO Stage IC2
  - Limited to one or both fallopian tubes
    - WITH capsule ruptured before surgery
    - OR tumor on fallopian tube surface
- FIGO Stage IC3
  - Malignant cells in ascites or peritoneal washings
    - WITH or WITHOUT capsule rupture
- FIGO Stage IIA
  - Extension to or implants on
    - Adnexa
    - Corpus uteri
    - Ovary(ies)
    - Uterus, NOS
- FIGO Stage IIB
  - Extension to or implants to other pelvic tissues
    - Adjacent peritoneum
    - Broad ligament, ipsilateral
    - Cul de sac (rectouterine pouch)
    - Mesosalpinx, ipsilateral
    - Rectosigmoid
    - Sigmoid
- FIGO Stage II [NOS]
  - Confined to pelvis
• Tumor involves one or both fallopian tubes
  • WITH pelvic extension, NOS (below pelvic brim)
• FIGO Stage IIIA
  • Microscopic peritoneal implants beyond pelvis
    • Includes peritoneal surface/capsule of liver
    • Omentum
    • Small intestine

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

• Aortic, NOS
  • Lateral (lumbar)
  • Para-aortic
  • Periaortic
• Iliac, NOS
  • Common
  • External
    • Internal (hypogastric, obturator, NOS)
• Intra-abdominal
• Lateral sacral (laterosacral)
• Pelvic, NOS
• Retroperitoneal, NOS
• Subdiaphragmatic (primary peritoneal carcinoma)
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  • Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

• Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  • FIGO Stage IIIB
    • Includes peritoneal surface of liver
    • Macroscopic peritoneal implants beyond pelvis less than or equal to 2 cm in diameter
  • FIGO Stage IIIC
    • Includes peritoneal surface of liver (liver capsule)
    • Includes tumor extension to liver and spleen WITHOUT parenchymal involvement of either organ
    • Macroscopic peritoneal implants beyond pelvis greater than 2 cm in diameter
  • FIGO Stage III [NOS]
- One or both fallopian tubes involved WITH microscopic confirmed peritoneal metastasis outside of the pelvis
  - Peritoneal implants, NOS
  - FIGO Stage IVA
    - Pleural effusion with positive cytology
  - FIGO Stage IVB
    - Extra-abdominal organs
    - Liver parenchymal
    - Spleen parenchymal
    - Transmural involvement of intestine
  - FIGO Stage IV [NOS]
    - Distant lymph node(s), NOS
      - Inguinal
    - Distant metastasis, NOS
      - Carcinomatosis (involvement of multiple parenchymal organs)
        - WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s) OR pleural effusion
      - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

**9 Unknown if extension or metastasis**
ADNEXA UTERINE OTHER

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701 (C571-C574)

C571-C574
C571 Broad ligament
C572 Round ligament
C573 Parametrium
C574 Uterine adnexa

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this schema

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to tissue or organ of origin

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Corpus uteri
- Fallopian tube for ligaments
- Mesosalpinx, ipsilateral
- Ovary, ipsilateral
- Peritoneum
- Uterus, NOS
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Aortic, NOS
  - Lateral (lumbar)
  - Para-aortic
  - Periaortic
- Iliac, NOS
  - Common
  - External
  - Internal (hypogastric)
    - Obturator
- Inguinal
- Lateral sacral (laterosacral)
- Pelvic, NOS
- Retroperitoneal, NOS
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Cervix uteri
  - Cul de sac (rectouterine pouch)
  - Omentum
  - Ovary, contralateral
  - Rectosigmoid
  - Sigmoid
  - Small intestine
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
GENITAL FEMALE OTHER

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C577-C579
C577 Other specified parts of female genital organs
C578 Overlapping lesion of female genital organs
C579 Female genital tract, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to tissue or organ of origin

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent connective tissue
- Adjacent organ(s)/structure(s)
  - Adnexa
  - Broad ligament(s)
  - Cervix uteri
  - Corpus uteri
  - Fallopian tube(s)
  - Ovary(ies)
  - Parametrium
Round ligament(s)
- Uterus, NOS
- Vagina

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Other organ(s) of pelvis
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
PLACENTA

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9100-9105, 9700-9701

C589
C589 Placenta

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9091, 9110-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: If a trophoblastic tumor is not associated with a pregnancy and arises in another site, such as ovary, use the primary site code and the appropriate Summary Stage chapter.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- FIGO Stage I
  - Confined to placenta

2 Regional by direct extension only

- FIGO Stage II
  - Adjacent connective tissue, NOS
  - Cervix
  - Corpus uteri
  - Other genital structure(s) by DIRECT EXTENSION or NOS
    - Broad ligament
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Aortic, NOS
  - Lateral (lumbar)
  - Para-aortic
  - Peri-aortic
- Iliac, NOS
  - Common
  - External
  - Internal (hypogastric), NOS
    - Obturator
- Parametrial
- Pelvic, NOS
- Sacral
  - Lateral (laterosacral)
  - Middle (promontorial) (Gerota’s node)
  - Presacral
  - Uterosacral
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Other genital structure(s) by METASTASIS
    - Broad ligament
    - Cervix uteri
    - Corpus uteri
    - Fallopian tube(s)
    - Genital structure(s), NOS
    - Ovary(ies)
    - Uterus, NOS
    - Vagina

- Fallopian tube(s)
- Genital structure(s), NOS
- Ovary(ies)
- Vagina
  - Uterus, NOS
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Superficial inguinal (femoral)
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
MALE GENITAL SYSTEM

PENIS

8000-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700

C600-C602, C608-C609
C600 Prepuce
C601 Glans penis
C602 Body of penis
C608 Overlapping lesion of penis
C609 Penis, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8041, 8190, 8247: Merkel Cell Skin
- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Skin
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma
- 9700-9701: Mycosis Fungoides

Note 3: Code 0 if a verrucous carcinoma is described as noninvasive or as having a broad pushing border or penetration.

- If there is destructive invasion of verrucous carcinoma into structures in code 1 or greater, assign the appropriate higher code

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

- Bowen disease
- Carcinoma in situ (Penile intraepithelial neoplasia [PeIN])
• Erythroplasia of Queyrat
• Noninvasive localized squamous cell carcinoma
• Noninvasive verrucous carcinoma
• Verrucous carcinoma, NOS

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

• Confined to penis
  o WITH or WITHOUT perineural and/or lymphovascular invasion
• Dartos fascia (foreskin)
• Dermis (foreskin)
• Lamina propria (glans and foreskin)
• Subepithelial connective tissue (shaft)
• Verrucous carcinoma, NOS

2 Regional by direct extension only

• Corpus (cavernosum or spongiosum, including tunica albuginea)
  o WITH or WITHOUT urethral invasion
• Muscle, NOS
  o Bulbospongiosus
  o Ischiocavernosus
  o Superficial transverse perineal
• Prostate
• Pubic bone
• Scrotum
• Skin (abdominal, perineum)

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

• Iliac, NOS
  o External
  o Internal (hypogastric, obturator)
    • Inguinal, NOS
    • Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)
    • Superficial [femoral]
  o Pelvic, NOS
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s), NOS
4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Testis
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
PROSTATE

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C619
C619 Prostate gland

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: See the Urethra chapter for transitional cell (urothelial) carcinoma of the prostatic urethra (C680).

Note 4: Assign code 1 when there is only a TURP.

Note 5: Imaging is not used to determine the clinical extension unless the physician clearly incorporates imaging findings into their evaluation.

Note 6: If there is no information from the DRE, but the physician assigns a clinical extent of disease, the registrar can use that.

- Example: DRE reveals prostate is “firm.” Physician stages the patient as a cT2a. The T2a (localized) can be used since the physician has documented this.

Note 7: Involvement of prostatic urethra does not alter the Summary Stage code.

Note 8: “Frozen pelvis” is a clinical term which means tumor extends to pelvic sidewall(s) (code 7).
Note 9: When prostate cancer is an incidental finding during a prostatectomy for other reasons (for example, a cystoprostatectomy for bladder cancer), use the appropriate code for the extent of disease found.

**SUMMARY STAGE**

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)
   - Clinically apparent or inapparent tumor
   - Confined to prostate, NOS
   - Intracapsular involvement only
   - Invasion into (but not beyond) prostatic capsule
   - No extracapsular extension
   - One or more lobes involved

2 Regional by direct extension only
   - Bladder neck
   - Bladder, NOS
   - External sphincter
   - Extraprostatic/extracapsular extension (beyond prostate capsule), unilateral, bilateral, NOS
   - Extraprostatic urethra (membranous urethra)
   - Fixation, NOS
   - Levator muscles
   - Periprostatic tissue
   - Rectovesical (Denonvillier's) fascia
   - Rectum
   - Seminal vesicles
   - Skeletal muscle
   - Through capsule, NOS
   - Ureter(s)

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only
   - Hypogastric
   - Iliac, NOS
     - External
     - Internal (hypogastric) (obturator), NOS
   - Pelvic, NOS
   - Periprostatic
   - Sacral, NOS
- Lateral (laterosacral)
  - Middle (promontory) (Gerota’s node)
  - Presacral
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Bone
  - Extension to or fixation to pelvic wall or pelvic bone
  - "Frozen pelvis", NOS
  - Other organs
  - Penis
  - Sigmoid colon
  - Soft tissue other than periprostatic
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Aortic (lateral [lumbar], para-aortic, periaortic, NOS)
  - Cervical
  - Common iliac
  - Inguinal (deep, NOS)
    - Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)
    - Superficial (femoral)
  - Retroperitoneal, NOS
  - Scalene (inferior deep cervical)
  - Supraclavicular (transverse cervical)
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
TESTIS

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9061, 9064-9065, 9070-9071, 9080-9081, 9084-9085, 9100-9101, 9104-9105, 9700-9701

C620-C621, C629
C620 Undescended testis
C621 Descended testis
C629 Testis, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

  (https://seer.cancer.gov/archive/manuals/EOD10Dig.3rd.pdf)
- SEER Summary Staging Manual-2000: Codes and Coding Instructions
  (https://seer.cancer.gov/tools/ssm/)
- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05:
  https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9060, 9062-9063, 9072-9073, 9082-9083, 9086-9091, 9102-9103, 9110-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

- Germ cell neoplasia in situ
- Intratubular germ cell neoplasia

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- WITHOUT lymphovascular invasion or UNKNOWN if lymphovascular invasion
  - Body of testis
  - Rete testis
  - Surface implants (surface of tunica vaginalis)
  - Tunica albuginea
  - Tunica vaginalis involved
  - Tunica, NOS
2 Regional by direct extension only

- WITH lymphovascular invasion
  - Tumor limited to testis (including rete testis invasion)
- Any of the following sites WITH or WITHOUT lymphovascular invasion
  - Dartos muscle, ipsilateral
  - Epididymis
  - Hilar soft tissue
  - Mediastinum (of testis)
  - Scrotum, ipsilateral
  - Spermatic cord, ipsilateral
  - Vas deferens
  - Visceral mesothelial layer

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Lymph nodes WITH or WITHOUT previous scrotal or inguinal surgery
  - Aortic, NOS
    - Lateral (lumbar)
    - Para-aortic
    - Periaortic
    - Preaortic
    - Retroaortic
  - Pericaval, NOS
    - Interaortocaval
    - Paracaval
    - Precaval
    - Retrocaval
  - Retroperitoneal, NOS
  - Spermatic vein
  - Regional lymph node(s), NOS
    - Lymph node(s), NOS
- Lymph nodes WITH previous scrotal or inguinal surgery
  - External iliac
  - Inguinal node(s), NOS
    - Deep, NOS
    - Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)
    - Superficial (femoral)
  - Pelvic, NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Adrenal (suprarenal gland)
  - Kidney
  - Penis
  - Retroperitoneum
  - Scrotum, contralateral
  - Testis, bilateral
  - Ulceration of scrotum

- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Deep, NOS
  - Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)
  - Superficial (femoral)
    - Pelvic, NOS
  - Lymph nodes WITHOUT previous scrotal or inguinal surgery or UNKNOWN if previous scrotal or inguinal surgery
    - External iliac
    - Inguinal nodes, NOS

- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
GENITAL MALE OTHER

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701 (C630-C631, C637-C639)
8000-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700 (C632)

C630-C632, C637-C639
C630 Epididymis
C631 Spermatic cord
C632 Scrotum, NOS
C637 Other specified parts of male genital organs
C638 Overlapping lesion of male genital organs
C639 Male genital organs, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: *Soft Tissue*
- 8935-8936: *GIST*
- 9140: *Kaposi Sarcoma*

Note 3: See the following chapters for scrotum (C632) for the listed histologies

- 8041, 8190, 8247 *Merkel Cell Skin*
- 8720-8790 *Melanoma Skin*
- 9700-9701 *Mycosis Fungoides*

Note 4: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to tissue or organ of origin
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent connective tissue
- Adjacent organ(s)/structure(s)
  - Epididymis (from other site)
  - Penis
  - Prostate
  - Seminal vesicle (from other site)
  - Skeletal muscle (scrotum only)
  - Spermatic cord (vas deferens) (from other site)
  - Testis
  - Tunica vaginalis (from other site)

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Iliac , NOS
  - External
  - Internal (hypogastric), NOS
    - Obturator
- Inguinal , NOS
  - Deep inguinal, NOS
    - Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)
  - Superficial inguinal (femoral)
- Pelvic , NOS
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
- Other organ(s) and structure(s) in male pelvis
  - Bladder
  - Bone (axial or appendicular skeleton) (scrotum only)
  - Rectum
  - Underlying cartilage (scrotum only)
  - Urethra
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
URINARY SYSTEM

BLADDER, RENAL PELVIS AND URETERS ANATOMIC STRUCTURES

Table of Anatomic Structures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRIMARY SITE</th>
<th>MUCOSA</th>
<th>MUSCULARIS PROPIA</th>
<th>SEROSA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-Epithelium</td>
<td>-Lamina propria submucosa</td>
<td>Yes, on superior surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder (C67_)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal pelvis (C659)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ureter (C669)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The layers of the urinary tract include:

1. The **EPITHELIAL LAYER** contains no blood vessels or lymphatics
2. The **BASEMENT MEMBRANE**, a sheet of extracellular material, functions as a filtration barrier and a boundary involved in generating and maintaining tissue structure
3. The **LAMINA PROPIA**, composed of areolar connective tissue, contains blood vessels, nerves, and, in some regions, glands. Once tumor has broken through the basement membrane into the lamina propria, it can spread by way of the lymphatics and blood vessels to other parts of the body
4. The urinary sites do NOT have a **MUSCULARIS MUCOSAE**, and, therefore, the lamina propria and the submucosa are difficult to separate. These terms are used interchangeably
5. The **SUBMUCOSA** is a thick layer of either dense or areolar connective tissue. It contains blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, nerves, and, in some regions, glands
6. The **MUSCULARIS PROPIA** is composed of multiple layers of muscle tissue; it constitutes the wall of the organ
7. The **SEROSA**, the outermost layer covering, is a serous membrane, part of the visceral peritoneum. It covers only the superior surface of the bladder. There is no serosa on the renal pelvis or ureters.
   a. Where there is no serosa, the connective tissue of surrounding structures merges with the connective tissue of the urinary organs and is called **ADVENTITIA**.
KIDNEY (RENAL PARENCHYMA)

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C649
C649 Kidney, NOS (Renal parenchyma)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined (limited) to the kidney, NOS
- Invasion of renal capsule
- Invasive cancer confined to kidney cortex and/or medulla
- Pelvicalyceal system
- Renal pelvis or calyces involved
- Separate focus of tumor in renal pelvis/calyx

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adrenal gland (ipsilateral) (contiguous metastasis)
- Ascending colon from right kidney
- Beyond Gerota’s fascia, NOS
- Blood vessel(s) (major)
  - Extrarenal portion of renal vein or segmental (muscle containing branches)
- Hilar blood vessel
- Inferior vena cava
- Perirenal vein/fat
- Renal artery
- Renal vein, NOS/sinus fat
- Tumor thrombus in a renal vein, NOS
- Descending colon from left kidney
- Diaphragm
- Duodenum from right kidney
- Perinephric tissue
- Peritoneum
- Psoas muscle
- Quadratus lumborum muscle
- Retroperitoneal soft tissue
- Tail of pancreas
- Ureter (ipsilateral), including implant(s)

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Aortic, NOS
  - Lateral (lumbar)
  - Para-aortic
  - Periaortic
  - Preaortic
  - Retroaortic
- Caval, NOS
  - Interaortocaval
  - Paracaval
  - Pericaval
  - Precaval
  - Retrocaval
- Renal hilar
- Retroperitoneal, NOS
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Adrenal gland
    - Contralateral
    - Ipsilateral, noncontiguous
  - Aorta
  - Contralateral kidney
  - Contralateral ureter
  - Liver
  - Ribs
  - Spleen
  - Stomach
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
KIDNEY RENAL PELVIS

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C659, C669
C659 Renal pelvis
C669 Ureter

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Tumor involving both renal pelvis and ureter (unifocal or multifocal) is classified by the depth of greatest invasion in either organ.

Note 4: Direct invasion of the bladder by a ureteral tumor is classified by the depth of greatest invasion of the bladder or ureter.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

- Flat, sessile
- Noninvasive papillary carcinoma

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to renal pelvis, NOS
- Confined to ureter, NOS
- Muscularis
  - Renal pelvis only
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Extension to bladder from ureter
  - Muscularis of distal ureter and/or bladder
  - Subepithelial connective tissue of distal ureter and/or bladder
- Invasion beyond muscularis into
  - Peripelvic fat (renal pelvis)
  - Periureteric fat (ureter)
  - Retroperitoneal soft/connective tissue
- Renal pelvis and ureter (unifocal or multifocal)
  - Duodenum (from right renal pelvis or right ureter)
  - Ipsilateral adrenal gland (suprarenal) gland
  - Major blood vessel(s)
    - Aorta
    - Renal artery/vein
    - Vena cava (inferior)
  - Muscularis
    - Distal ureter from proximal ureter
    - Renal pelvis from ureter
    - Ureter from renal pelvis
  - Psoas muscle (ureter)
  - Subepithelial connective tissue
    - Distal ureter from proximal ureter
    - Renal pelvis from ureter
    - Ureter from renal pelvis
  - Tumor thrombus in a renal vein, NOS
- Renal pelvis only
  - Ipsilateral kidney parenchyma and kidney, NOS

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- All sites
  - Lateral aortic (lumbar)
  - Paracaval
  - Renal hilar
  - Retroperitoneal, NOS
  - Regional lymph node(s), NOS
    - Lymph node(s), NOS
- Renal Pelvis
- Aortic (para-aortic, periaortic, NOS)
- Ureter
  - Iliac (common, external, NOS)
  - Internal (hypogastric) (obturator)
  - Pelvic, NOS
  - Periureteral

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved
- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved
- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Ascending colon (from right renal pelvis or right ureter)
  - Bladder (wall or mucosa) from renal pelvis
  - Colon, NOS
  - Descending colon (from right renal pelvis or right ureter)
  - Ipsilateral kidney parenchyma from ureter
  - Liver (from right renal pelvis or right ureter)
  - Pancreas
  - Perirenal (perinephric) fat (via kidney)
  - Prostate (ureter)
  - Spleen (from left renal pelvis or left ureter)
  - Uterus (ureter)
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
DISTINGUISHING NONINVASIVE AND INVASIVE BLADDER CANCER

1. The two main types of bladder cancer are the flat (sessile) variety and the papillary type.
   a. Only the flat (sessile) variety is called in situ when tumor has not penetrated the basement membrane
   b. Papillary tumor that has not penetrated the basement membrane is called noninvasive, and pathologists use many different descriptive terms for noninvasive papillary transitional cell carcinoma.
   c. Frequently, the pathology report does not contain a definite statement of noninvasion; however, noninvasion can be inferred from the microscopic description.
   d. The more commonly used descriptions for noninvasion are listed below.

2. Careful attention must be given to the use of the term “confined to mucosa” for bladder. Historically, carcinomas described as “confined to mucosa” were coded as localized. However, pathologists use this designation for noninvasion as well. To rule out the possibility of assigning noninvasive tumors in this category, abstractors should determine:
   a. If the tumor is confined to the epithelium, then it is noninvasive.
   b. If the tumor has penetrated the basement membrane to invade the lamina propria, then it is invasive

3. The terms lamina propria, submucosa, stroma, and subepithelial connective tissue are used interchangeably.

   **Note:** Only if the distinction cannot be made should the tumor be assigned 1 (localized) for “confined to mucosa.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definite statements of noninvasion for papillary transitional cell carcinomas include</th>
<th>Inferred descriptions of noninvasion for papillary transitional cell carcinomas include</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Noninfiltrating</td>
<td>No involvement of muscularis propria and no mention of subepithelium/submucosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noninvasive</td>
<td>No statement of invasion (microscopic description present)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No evidence of invasion</td>
<td>(Underlying) Tissue insufficient to judge depth of invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No extension into lamina propria</td>
<td>No invasion of bladder wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No stromal invasion</td>
<td>No involvement of muscularis propria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No extension into underlying supporting tissue</td>
<td>Benign deeper tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative lamina propria &amp; (superficial) muscle</td>
<td>Microscopic description problematic (noninvasion versus superficial invasion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative muscle and (subepithelial) connective tissue</td>
<td>Frond surfaced by transitional cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No infiltrative behavior/component</td>
<td>No mural infiltration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No evidence of invasion (no sampled stroma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Confined to mucosa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BLADDER

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C670-C679
C670 Trigone of bladder
C671 Dome of bladder
C672 Lateral wall of bladder
C673 Anterior wall of bladder
C674 Posterior wall of bladder
C675 Bladder neck
C676 Ureteric orifice
C677 Urachus
C678 Overlapping lesion of bladder
C679 Bladder, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: The two main types of bladder cancer are the flat (sessile) variety and the papillary type. The flat (sessile) variety is called in situ when tumor has not penetrated the basement membrane. Papillary tumor that has not penetrated the basement membrane is called noninvasive.

Note 4: Noninvasive papillary transitional carcinoma: Pathologists use many different descriptive terms for noninvasive papillary transitional cell carcinoma. Frequently, the pathology report does not contain a definite statement of non-invasion; however, non-invasion can be inferred from the microscopic description.
Definite statements of non-invasion for papillary transitional cell carcinomas (Ta) include

- Noninfiltrating
- Noninvasive
- No evidence of invasion
- No extension into lamina propria
- No stromal invasion
- No extension into underlying supporting tissue
- Negative lamina propria and superficial muscle
- Negative muscle and (subepithelial) connective tissue
- No infiltrative behavior/component

Inferred descriptions of non-invasion for papillary transitional cell carcinomas include

- No involvement of muscularis propria and no mention of subepithelium/submucosa
- No statement of invasion (microscopic description present)
- (Underlying) Tissue insufficient to judge depth of invasion
- No invasion of bladder wall
- No involvement of muscularis propria
- Benign deeper tissue
- Microscopic description problematic (non-invasion versus superficial invasion)
- Frond surfaced by transitional cell
- No mural infiltration
- No evidence of invasion (no sampled stroma)
- Confined to mucosa

**Note 5:** Noninvasive (in situ) flat transitional cell carcinoma: Careful attention must be given to the use of the term "confined to mucosa" for flat bladder carcinomas. Historically, carcinomas described as "confined to mucosa" were coded as localized. However, pathologists use this designation for non-invasion as well. Pathologists also vary in their use of the terms "invasion of mucosa, grade 1" and "invasion of mucosa, grade 2" to distinguish between noninvasive and invasive carcinomas. In order to accurately code tumors described as "confined to mucosa", abstractors should determine

- If the tumor is confined to the epithelium: then it is noninvasive (IS).
- If the tumor has penetrated the basement membrane to invade the lamina propria: then it is invasive and coded to 1 for localized. The lamina propria and submucosa tend to merge when there is no muscularis mucosa, so these terms may be used interchangeably, along with stroma and subepithelial connective tissue.
- If the distinction between involvement of the epithelium and lamina propria cannot be made, then the tumor should be coded as "confined to mucosa, NOS" (IS).
- Statements meaning confined to mucosa, NOS for flat transitional cell carcinomas include
  - Confined to mucosal surface
  - Limited to mucosa, no invasion of submucosa and muscularis
  - No infiltration/invasion of fibromuscular and muscular stroma
  - Superficial, NOS
Note 6: Code 2 for regional if the only description of extension is through full thickness of bladder wall, and there is no clear statement as to whether or not the cancer has extended into fat.

**SUMMARY STAGE**

0 **In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial**

- Nonpapillary
  - Carcinoma in situ, NOS
  - Sessile (flat) (solid) carcinoma in situ
  - Transitional cell carcinoma in situ
- Papillary
  - Non-infiltrating
  - Transitional cell carcinoma, stated to be non-invasive
  - Transitional cell carcinoma, with inferred description of non-invasion

1 **Localized only (localized, NOS)**

- Mucosa, NOS
- Muscle (muscularis propria)
  - Deep muscle-outer half
  - Extension through full thickness of bladder wall
  - Superficial muscle-inner half
- Submucosa
  - Lamina propria
  - Stroma
  - Subepithelial connective tissue
  - Tunica propria
- Subserosa

2 **Regional by direct extension only**

- Adventitia
- Bladder is “fixed”
- Extravesical tumor, NOS
- Parametrium
- Periprostatic tissue
- Peritoneum
- Periureteral fat/tissue
- Perivesical fat/tissue
- Prostate
- Rectovesical/Denonvilliers’ fascia
- Seminal vesicle
- Serosa (mesothelium) (to/through)
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Iliac, NOS
  - External
  - Internal (hypogastric)
- Obturator
- Pelvic, NOS
- Perivesical pelvic, NOS
- Sacral, NOS
  - Lateral (laterosacral)
  - Presacral
  - Sacral promontory (Gerota’s)
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Abdominal wall
  - Bone
  - Colon
  - Large intestine including rectum
  - Pelvic wall
  - Pubic bone
  - Small intestine
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Common iliac
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
URETHRA

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C680
C680 Urethra
C680 Prostatic Urethra

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

- Urethra
  - Non-invasive papillary carcinoma
  - Carcinoma in situ
- Prostatic Urethra
  - Non-invasive papillary carcinoma
  - Carcinoma in situ involving (WITHOUT stromal invasion)
  - Periurethral or prostatic ducts
  - Prostatic urethra

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Muscularis invaded
- Subepithelial connective tissue (lamina propria, submucosa) invaded
2 Regional by direct extension only

- All sites
  - Bladder neck
- Urethra
  - Corpus cavernosum
  - Corpus spongiosum
  - Periurethral muscle (sphincter muscle)
  - Vagina (anterior, NOS)
- Prostatic urethra
  - Periprostatic fat (beyond prostate capsule)
  - Prostate (prostatic stroma)
  - Prostatic ducts

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Iliac (common, external, internal [hypogastric] [obturator], NOS)
- Inguinal (superficial [femoral], NOS)
- Inguinal, deep (Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller [highest deep inguinal], NOS)
- Pelvic, NOS (including true pelvis)
- Perivesical
- Presacral
- Sacral, NOS
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - All sites
    - Adjacent organ(s), NOS
    - Bladder wall
  - Prostatic urethra
    - Rectal wall
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
URINARY OTHER

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C681, C688-C689
C681 Paraurethral gland
C688 Overlapping lesion of urinary organs
C689 Urinary system, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive (flat, sessile)

- Noninvasive papillary, polypoid or verrucous carcinoma

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Lamina propria
- Muscularis
- Subepithelial connective
- Submucosa

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Beyond prostate capsule
- Bladder neck
- Corpus cavernosum
• Corpus spongiosum
• Periurethral muscle (sphincter)
• Prostate
• Vagina, anterior or NOS

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

• Iliac, NOS
  o Common
  o External
  o Internal (hypogastric), NOS
    ▪ Obturator
• Inguinal, NOS
  o Deep inguinal, NOS
    ▪ Node of Cloquet or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)
  o Superficial (femoral)
• Pelvic, NOS
• Sacral, NOS
  o Presacral
• Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

• Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

• Distant sites (including further contiguous extension)
  o Other adjacent organs, including
    ▪ Bladder (excluding bladder neck)
    ▪ Seminal vesicle(s)
• Distant lymph node(s), NOS
• Distant metastasis, NOS
  o Carcinomatosis
  o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
OPHTHALMIC SITES

SKIN EYELID

8000-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8940-8941, 8980

C441
C441 Eyelid

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8041, 8190, 8247: Merkel Cell Skin
- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8950-8975, 8981-9137, 9141-9514, 9520-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Skin
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma
- 9700-9701: Mycosis Fungoides

Note 3: Code the tumor with the greatest extension when there are multiple simultaneous tumors.

Note 4: Full eyelid thickness (code 1) is defined as including skin, orbicularis muscle, tarsus and conjunctiva (palpebral).

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

- Bowen disease
1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Eyelid margin
- Full thickness of eyelid
- Lesion(s) confined to dermis
- Minimal infiltration of dermis
- Subcutaneous tissue (through entire dermis)
- Underlying orbicularis muscle
- Tarsal plate
- Tarsus

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent structures, NOS
- Bone/periosteum of orbit
- Bony walls of orbit (invades or evades through)
- Bulbar conjunctiva
- Intraorbital structures, NOS
- Lacrimal sac
- Ocular structures
- Sclera
- Skeletal muscles (except orbicularis muscle of eyelid)
- Soft tissues of orbit
- Underlying cartilage

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Buccinator (buccal)
- Cervical, NOS
- Facial, NOS
- Intraparotid
- Nasolabial
- Parotid
  - Infra-auricular
  - Preauricular
- Submandibular [submaxillary]
- Submental
- Supraclavicular, NOS
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS
4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Brain
  - Central nervous system (CNS)
  - Nasal cavity
  - Nasolacrimal duct
  - Other craniofacial structures
  - Paranasal sinus
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Metastatic skin lesions with or without distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
CONJUNCTIVA

8000-8700, 9700-9701

C690
C690 Conjunctiva

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

  (https://seer.cancer.gov/archive/manuals/EOD10Dig.3rd.pdf)
- SEER Summary Staging Manual-2000: Codes and Coding Instructions
  (https://seer.cancer.gov/tools/ssm/)
- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05:
  https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx
- Chapter 65 Conjunctiva Carcinoma, in the AJCC Cancer Staging Manual, Eighth
  Edition (2017) published by Springer International Publishing. Used with permission of
  the American College of Surgeons, Chicago, Illinois.

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8921, 8932-8934, 8940-8990, 9000-9016, 9030-9137, 9141-9175,
  9181-9230, 9240-9509, 9520-9582: Orbital Sarcoma
- 8720-8790: Melanoma Conjunctiva
- 8930-8931, 8991, 9020, 9180, 9231: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma
- 9510-9514: Retinoblastoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

- CIN III (conjunctival intraepithelial neoplasia III)
- SIN III (squamous intraepithelial neoplasia III)

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to conjunctiva, NOS
- Confined to one subsite of conjunctiva
  - Bulbar conjunctiva
  - Forniceal conjunctiva
  - Palpebral conjunctiva
  - Tarsal conjunctiva
- Cornea (3, 6, 9, or 12 o'clock hours)
- Intraocular compartments
- Intraocular extension WITHOUT invasion of adjacent structures
2 Regional by direct extension only

- More than one subsite of conjunctiva involved
- Adjacent extraocular extension
  - Anterior eyelid lamella
  - Caruncle
  - Eyelid margin (lower and/or upper)
  - Lacrimal punctum and canaliculi (lower and/or upper)
  - Plica
  - Posterior eyelid lamella
- Adjacent paranasal sinuses
- Bone, bone of orbit
- Orbit, NOS
- Orbital soft tissues WITHOUT bone invasion

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Cervical, NOS
- Mandibular, NOS
  - Submandibular (submaxillary)
- Parotid, NOS
  - Infra-auricular
  - Preauricular
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Brain
  - Sinus
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
MELANOMA CONJUNCTIVA

8720-8790

C690
C690 Conjunctiva

Note: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Bulbar conjunctiva tumor with invasion of substantia propria
- Involvement of caruncle WITH extension to cornea
- Less than 1 quadrant to greater than 3 quadrant involved
- Noncaruncular or caruncular tumor with involvement of quadrant(s)
- Tumor(s) of nonbulbar conjunctiva, NOS WITH or WITHOUT corneal extension

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Eyelid
- Globe
- Lacrimal Sac
- Local invasion, NOS
- Nasolacrimal duct
- Orbit
- Paranasal sinuses
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Cervical, NOS
- Mandibular, NOS
  - Submandibular (submaxillary)
- Parotid, NOS
  - Infra-auricular
  - Preauricular
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Brain
  - Sinus
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
MELANOMA UVEA

8720-8790

C693-C694
C693 Choroid
C694 Ciliary Body, Iris

Note: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Choroid and Ciliary Body
  - Any tumor size category WITH or WITHOUT ciliary body involvement
    - WITHOUT or UNKNOWN extraocular extension
  - Limited to choroid or ciliary body, NOS
- Iris
  - Tumor confluent with or extending into ciliary body, choroid or both
    - WITH or WITHOUT secondary glaucoma unknown
    - WITH scleral extension
- Limited to iris, NOS

2 Regional by direct extension only

- All sites
  - Local invasion, NOS
- Choroid and Ciliary Body
  - Extraocular extension
- Iris
  - Extrascleral extension
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Discrete tumor deposits in orbit not contiguous to the eye
  - WITH or WITHOUT positive regional lymph node(s)
- Cervical, NOS
- Mandibular, NOS
  - Submandibular (submaxillary)
- Parotid, NOS
  - Infra-auricular
  - Preauricular
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
RETINOBLASTOMA

9510-9514

C690-C696, C698-C699
C690 Conjunctiva
C691 Cornea, NOS
C692 Retina
C693 Choroid
C694 Ciliary Body
C695 Lacrimal Gland
C696 Orbit, NOS
C698 Overlapping lesion of eye and adnexa
C699 Eye, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: Code 0 is not applicable for this chapter.

Note 3: Pathological staging information from an enucleation always takes precedence over clinical staging, except in cases with neoadjuvant treatment where clinical disease is as extensive as or more extensive than disease at surgery.

SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to retina, NOS
- Intraocular tumor(s) WITH local invasion, NOS
  - Choroid (concomitant focal invasion)
  - Pre- or intralaminar involvement of optic nerve head
  - Retinal detachment
  - Schlemm’s canal
  - Stromal invasion iris
  - Subretinal seeding
  - Trabecular meshwork
- Vitreous seeding
- Advanced intraocular tumor(s) WITH significant local invasion
  - Anterior chamber
  - Aseptic orbital cellulitis
  - Buphthalmos
  - Choroid (multiple foci, focal, full-thickness involvement)
  - Ciliary body
  - Emissary channels
  - Hyphema AND/OR massive vitreous hemorrhage
  - Iris
  - Lens
  - Pars plana
  - Phthisis or pre-phthisis bulbi
  - Raised intraocular pressure with neovascularization
  - Retrolaminar invasion of optic nerve head
  - Sclera
  - Zonules

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Extraocular tumor
  - Adjacent adipose tissue
  - Bone
  - Conjunctiva
  - Episclera
  - Extraocular muscle
  - Eyelids
  - Meningeal spaces (around optic nerve)
  - Optic nerve (clinical thickening)
  - Optic nerve (retrobulbar, extraocular)
  - Orbit
  - Orbital tissue (includes clinical orbital tissue thickening)

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Cervical, NOS
- Mandibular, NOS
  - Submandibular (submaxillary)
- Parotid
  - Infra-auricular
  - Preauricular
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS
4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Cerebrospinal fluid
  - CNS parenchyma
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
LACRIMAL GLAND/SAC

8000-8700, 8941, 8980, 8982, 9700-9701

C695
C695 Lacrimal gland
C695 Lacrimal sac

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8720-8790: Eye Other
- 8930-8931, 8991, 9020, 9180, 9231: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma
- 9510-9514: Retinoblastoma

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for Lacrimal Sac.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)
  - Confined to lacrimal gland
    - WITH or WITHOUT extraglandular extension into the orbital soft tissue
    - No periosteal or orbital bone involvement or UNKNOWN if involved

2 Regional by direct extension only
  - Confined to lacrimal gland
    - AND involvement of periosteum AND/OR periorbital bone
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Cervical, NOS
- Mandibular, NOS
  - Submandibular (submaxillary)
- Parotid, NOS
  - Infra-auricular
  - Preauricular
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Adjacent structure(s), NOS
  - Brain
  - Cavernous sinus
  - Orbital bone
  - Periosteum
  - Pterygoid fossa
  - Sinuses
  - Superior orbital fissure
  - Temporal fossa
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
ORBITAL SARCOMA

8710-8714, 8800-8921, 8932-8934, 8940-8990, 9000-9016, 9030-9137, 9141-9175, 9181-9230, 9240-9509, 9520-9582 (C690-C694, C696, C698-C699)

8710-8714, 8800-8921, 8932-8934, 8940, 8950-8975, 8981, 8983-8990, 9000-9016, 9030-9137, 9141-9175, 9181-9230, 9240-9509, 9520-9582 (C695)

8710-8714, 8800-8921, 8932-8934, 8940-8990, 9000-9016, 9030-9063, 9065, 9071-9073, 9081-9083, 9086-9091, 9101-9137, 9141-9175, 9181-9230, 9240-9361, 9363-9373, 9421, 9473, 9500, 9522, 9530, 9540-9582 (C723)

C690-C696, C698-C699, C723
C690 Conjunctiva
C691 Cornea, NOS
C692 Retina
C693 Choroid
C694 Ciliary Body
C695 Lacrimal Gland
C696 Orbit, NOS
C698 Overlapping lesion of eye and adnexa
C699 Eye, NOS
C723 Optic Nerve

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: Code 0 is not applicable for this chapter.

SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to orbit (including soft tissues)
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent paranasal sinuses
- Bony walls
- Conjunctiva
- Cranium
- Diffuse invasion of orbital tissue and bony walls
- Globe
- Orbital tissues (excluding orbit primary site)
- Periorbital structures

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Cervical, NOS
- Mandibular, NOS
  - Submandibular (submaxillary)
- Parotid, NOS
  - Infra-auricular
  - Preauricular
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Central nervous system
  - Eyelid(s)
  - Nasal cavity
  - Temporal fossa
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
LYMPHOMA OCULAR ADNEXA

9590-9699, 9702-9719, 9725-9726, 9734-9738, 9823, 9826-9827, 9930 (C441, C690, C695-C696)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: Code 0 is not applicable for this chapter.

Note 3: Ocular adnexal lymphomas (OAL) originate in conjunctiva, eyelids, lacrimal gland, lacrimal drainage apparatus, and other orbital tissues surrounding the eye. This chapter should not be used for secondary lymphomatous involvement of ocular adnexa or for intraocular lymphomas.

Note 4: If there is peripheral blood or bone marrow involvement, code 7.

SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Lymphoma involving the conjunctiva alone WITHOUT or UNKNOWN eyelid or orbital involvement
- Lymphoma with orbital involvement WITH or WITHOUT conjunctival involvement
- Lymphoma with preseptal eyelid involvement WITH or WITHOUT orbital or conjunctival involvement

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Orbital adnexal lymphoma AND extraorbital lymphoma extending beyond the orbit to adjacent structures
  - Bone
  - Brain
  - Maxillofacial sinuses
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Cervical
- Parotid
- Preauricular
- Regions draining the ocular adnexal structures
- Submandibular
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant sites
  - Non-contiguous involvement of other extranodal sites including, but not limited to
    - Breast
    - Gastrointestinal tract
    - Kidney
    - Liver
    - Lung
    - Parotid gland
    - Salivary gland
    - Spleen
    - Submandibular gland
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Diffuse OR disseminated involvement of peripheral and central lymph node regions
    - Mediastinum
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Blood/peripheral blood
  - Bone marrow
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
EYE OTHER

8000-8700, 9700-9701 (C691-C694, C696, C698-C699)
8720-8790 (C691-C692, C695-C696, C698-C699)

C691-C696, C698-C699
C691 Cornea, NOS
C692 Retina
C693 Choroid
C694 Ciliary Body
C695 Lacrimal Gland
C696 Orbit, NOS
C698 Overlapping lesion of eye and adnexa
C699 Eye, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- C693, C694 (8720-8790): Melanoma Uvea
- C695 (8000-8700, 8941, 8980, 8982, 9700-9701): Lacrimal Gland and Lacrimal Sac
- 8930-8931, 8991, 9020, 9180, 9231: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma
- 9510-9514: Retinoblastoma

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial
1 Localized only (localized, NOS)
   • Confined to tissue or organ of origin
   • Intraocular extension

2 Regional by direct extension only
   • Adjacent extraocular extension
     o Eyelid
     o Orbit

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only
   • Cervical, NOS
     o Mandibular, NOS
     o Submandibular (submaxillary)
   • Parotid, NOS
     o Infra-auricular
     o Preauricular
   • Regional lymph node(s), NOS
     o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved
   • Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved
   • Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
   • Distant lymph node(s), NOS
   • Distant metastasis, NOS
     o Carcinomatosis
     o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
BRAIN

BRAIN

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8802, 8810, 8815, 8850, 8890, 8900, 9064, 9070-9071, 9080, 9084-9085, 9100-9105, 9120, 9133, 9140, 9180, 9220, 9362, 9364, 9380-9540, 9680, 9699, 9700-9714, 9751-9759

C700, C710-C719
C700 Cerebral meninges
C710 Cerebrum
C711 Frontal lobe
C712 Temporal lobe
C713 Parietal lobe
C714 Occipital lobe
C715 Ventricle, NOS
C716 Cerebellum, NOS
C717 Brain stem
C718 Overlapping lesion of brain
C719 Brain, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8935-8936: GIST

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

Note 4: Assign code 8 for benign or borderline tumors.

Note 5: Codes 0, 3, and 4 are not applicable for this chapter.
Note 6: The following subsites code to C710 are INFRAtentorial:

- Hypothalamus
- Pallium
- Thalamus

Note 7: The following subsites coded to C718 are SUPRAtentorial

- Corpus callosum
- Tapetum

Note 8: The following sites coded to C719 are SUPRAtentorial

- Anterior cranial fossa
- Middle cranial fossa
- Suprasellar

Note 9: The following subsites coded to C719 are INFRAtentorial

- Posterior cranial fossa

Note 10: A midline shift is not the same thing as crossing the midline (code 2)

- It must state tumor crosses the midline

SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to brain, NOS
- Confined to ventricles
  - Tumor invades or encroaches upon ventricular system
- Infratentorial tumor confined to
  - Brain stem or meninges of brain stem (one side)
    - Medulla oblongata
    - Midbrain (mesencephalon)
    - Pons
  - Cerebellum or meninges of cerebellum (one side or midline)
    - Lateral lobes
    - Median lobe of cerebellum
    - Vermis
  - Hypothalamus
  - Thalamus
- Infratentorial tumor
  - Both cerebellum and brain stem involved with tumor on one side
- Supratentorial tumor confined to
Cerebral hemisphere (cerebrum) or meninges of cerebral hemisphere (one side)

- Frontal lobe
- Occipital lobe
- Parietal lobe
- Temporal lobe

2 Regional, NOS

- Bone (skull)
- Contralateral hemisphere
- Corpus callosum (including splenium)
- Major blood vessel(s)
- Meninges (e.g., dura)
- Nerves (cranial, NOS)
- Spinal cord/canal
- Supratentorial tumor extends infratentorially to involve
  - Brain stem
  - Cerebellum
  - Hypothalamus
  - Pallium
  - Posterior cranial fossa
  - Thalamus
- Infratentorial tumor extends supratentorially to involve
  - Anterior cranial fossa
  - Cerebrum (cerebral hemisphere) (excluding hypothalamus, pallium, thalamus)
  - Corpus callosum
  - Middle cranial fossa
  - Suprasellar brain
  - Tapetum
- Tumor crosses the midline

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Circulating cells in cerebral spinal fluid (CSF)
  - Nasal cavity
  - Nasopharynx
  - Other direct extension outside CNS
  - Posterior pharynx
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)
  - Metastasis within CNS and CSF pathways
    - "Drop" metastasis
- Extra-neural metastasis
- Metastasis outside the CNS

8 Benign or borderline brain

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
CNS OTHER

C701, C709, C720-C721, C728-C729: 8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8802, 8810, 8815, 8850, 8890, 8900, 9064, 9070-9071, 9080, 9084-9085, 9100-9105, 9120, 9133, 9140, 9180, 9220, 9362, 9364, 9380-9540, 9680, 9699, 9700-9714, 9751-9759

C722, C724-C725: 8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8900, 9064, 9070-9071, 9080, 9084-9085, 9100, 9120, 9140, 9220, 9362, 9380-9539, 9680, 9699, 9700-9714, 9751-9759

C723: 8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9064, 9070, 9080, 9084-9085, 9100, 9140, 9180, 9362, 9380-9420, 9423-9472, 9474-9493, 9501-9521, 9523, 9531-9539, 9680, 9699, 9700-9714, 9751-9759

C701, C709, C720-C725, C728, C729
C701 Spinal meninges
C709 Meninges, NOS
C720 Spinal cord
C721 Cauda equina
C722 Olfactory nerve
C723 Optic nerve
C724 Acoustic nerve
C725 Cranial nerve, NOS
C728 Overlapping lesion of brain and central nervous system
C729 Nervous system, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

• C723 (8710-8714, 8800-8921, 8932-8934, 8940-8990, 9000-9016, 9030-9063, 9065, 9071-9073, 9081-9083, 9086-9091, 9101-9137, 9141-9175, 9181-9230, 9240-9361, 9363-9373, 9421, 9473, 9500, 9522, 9530, 9540-9582): Orbital Sarcoma
• C723 (8930-8931, 8991, 9020, 9231): Soft Tissue
• 8935-8936: GIST

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

Note 4: Assign code 8 for benign or borderline tumors.

Note 5: Codes 0, 3, and 4 are not applicable for this chapter.

SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)
  • Confined to tissue or site of origin

2 Regional, NOS
  • Adjacent connective/soft tissue
  • Adjacent muscle
  • Brain for cranial nerve tumor(s)
  • Major blood vessel(s)
  • Meningeal tumor infiltrates nerve
  • Nerve tumor infiltrates meninges (dura)
  • Sphenoid and frontal sinuses (skull)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved
  • Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
    o Bone other than skull
    o Brain except for cranial nerve tumor(s)
    o Eye
  • Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  • Distant metastasis, NOS
    o Carcinomatosis
    o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

8 Benign or borderline brain

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
INTRACRANIAL GLAND

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8900, 9064, 9070-9071, 9080, 9084-9085, 9100, 9120, 9140, 9220, 9362, 9380-9539, 9680, 9699, 9700-9714, 9751-9759

C751-C753
C751 Pituitary gland
C752 Craniopharyngeal duct
C753 Pineal Gland

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8935-8936: GIST

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

Note 4: Assign code 8 for benign or borderline tumors.

Note 5: Codes 3 and 4 are not applicable for this chapter.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to gland of origin
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent connective/soft tissue
- Adjacent organ(s)/structure(s) for pituitary and craniopharyngeal duct
  - Cavernous sinus
  - Infundibulum
  - Pons
  - Sphenoid body and sinuses
- Adjacent organ(s)/structure(s) for pineal
  - Infratentorial and central brain

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

8 Benign or borderline brain

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

THYROID

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C739
C739 Thyroid gland

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to thyroid, NOS
- Into thyroid capsule, but not beyond
- Multiple foci confined to thyroid
- Single invasive tumor confined to thyroid
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Blood vessel(s) (major)
  - Carotid artery (encased)
  - Jugular vein
  - Thyroid artery or vein
- Cricoid cartilage
- Esophagus
- Extrathyroidal extension (microscopic, macroscopic, NOS)
- Larynx
- Nerves
  - Recurrent laryngeal
  - Vagus nerve
- Parathyroid
- Pericapsular soft tissue/connective tissue
- Sternocleidomastoid muscle
- Strap muscle(s)
  - Omohyoid
  - Sternohyoid
  - Sternothyroid
  - Thyrohyoid
- Subcutaneous soft tissue
- Thyroid cartilage
- Trachea
- Tumor described as “FIXED to adjacent tissues”

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular

Level VI - Anterior compartment group
- Laterotracheal
- Paralaryngeal
- Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
- Perithyroidal
- Precricoid (Delphian)
- Prelaryngeal
- Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
- Recurrent laryngeal

Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
- Esophageal groove
- Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch

Other groups
- Cervical, NOS
- Deep cervical, NOS
- Facial
  - Buccinator (buccal)
  - Mandibular
  - Nasolabial
- Internal jugular, NOS
- Parapharyngeal
- Parotid
  - Infraauricular
  - Intraratotid
  - Periparotid
  - Preauricular
- Retroauricular (mastoid)
- Retropharyngeal
- Suboccipital

Regional lymph node(s), NOS
- Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Gross extrathyroidal extension invading
    - Bone
    - Mediastinal tissues
- Prevertebral fascia
- Skeletal muscle, other than strap or sternocleidomastoid muscle
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant mets WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
PARATHYROID

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C750
C750 Parathyroid

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Parathyroid tumors are defined as left or right and superior (upper) or inferior (lower).

Note 4: Atypical parathyroid neoplasms (code 0) are defined as tumors that are histologically or clinically worrisome but do not fulfill the more robust criteria [i.e., invasion metastasis] for carcinoma.

Note 5: Metastases for the parathyroid is anything beyond the central and lateral part of the neck.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ, intraepithelial, noninvasive

- Atypical parathyroid neoplasm (neoplasm of uncertain malignant potential)

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to parathyroid
- Extension to soft tissue
2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent lymph nodes
- Esophagus
- Recurrent laryngeal nerve
- Thymus
- Thyroid gland
- Trachea
- Skeletal muscle

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Level I
  - Level IA - Submental
  - Level IB - Submandibular (submaxillary), sublingual
- Level II - Upper jugular
  - Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)
  - Upper deep cervical
  - Level IIA - Anterior
  - Level IIB - Posterior
- Level III - Middle jugular
  - Middle deep cervical
- Level IV - Lower jugular
  - Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)
  - Lower deep cervical
  - Virchow node
- Level V - Posterior triangle group
  - Posterior cervical
  - Level VA - Spinal accessory
  - Level VB - Transverse cervical, supraclavicular
- Level VI - Anterior compartment group
  - Laterotracheal
  - Paralaryngeal
  - Paratracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Perithyroidal
  - Precricoid (Delphian)
  - Prelaryngeal
  - Pretracheal - above suprasternal notch
  - Recurrent laryngeal
- Level VII - Superior mediastinal group (for other mediastinal node(s) see code 7)
  - Esophageal groove
  - Paratracheal - below suprasternal notch
  - Pretracheal - below suprasternal notch
- Other groups
  - Cervical, NOS
Deep cervical, NOS

Facial
  - Buccinator (buccal)
  - Mandibular
  - Nasolabial

Internal jugular, NOS

Parapharyngeal

Parotid
  - Infraauricular
  - Intraparotid
  - Periparotid
  - Preauricular

Retroauricular (mastoid)

Retropharyngeal

Suboccipital

Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved
  - Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved
  - Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
    - Bone
    - Diaphragm
    - Liver
    - Lung
    - Pancreas
    - Spleen
  - Distant lymph node(s), NOS
  - Distant metastasis, NOS
    - Carcinomatosis
    - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
ADRENAL GLAND

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C740-C741, C749, C755
C740 Cortex of adrenal gland
C741 Medulla of adrenal gland
C749 Adrenal gland, NOS
C755 Aortic body and other paraganglioma (Histologies 8680, 8690, 8692-8693, 8700 only)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Confined to adrenal gland, no extra-adrenal invasion

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent connective tissue
- Gerota’s fascia
- Invasion of adjacent organs
  - Blood vessels (large)
- Renal vein
  - Vena cava
    - Kidney
    - Retroperitoneal structures including
      - Great vessels (aorta, inferior vena cava)

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Aortic, NOS
  - Para-aortic
  - Periaortic
- Pericaval, NOS
  - Paracaval
  - Precaval
  - Retrocaval
- Retroperitoneal, NOS
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - Bone
  - Diaphragm
  - Liver
  - Lung
  - Pancreas
  - Spleen
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
ENDOCRINE OTHER

8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701 (C754, C758-C759)
8000-8671, 8681-8683, 8691, 8720-8790, 9700-9701 (C755)

C754-C755, C758-C759
C754 Carotid body
C755 Aortic body and other paraganglia
C758 Overlapping lesion of endocrine glands and related structures
C759 Endocrine gland, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following chapters for the listed histologies

- 8680, 8690, 8692-8693, 8700 (C755 only): Adrenal Gland
- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: Soft Tissue
- 8935-8936: GIST
- 9140: Kaposi Sarcoma

Note 3: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

SUMMARY STAGE

0 In situ: noninvasive, intraepithelial

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- Invasive tumor confined to gland of origin

2 Regional by direct extension only

- Adjacent connective tissue
- Adjacent organs/structures
  - Aortic body
  - Organs/structures in mediastinum
  - Carotid body
    - Upper neck
3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Cervical for carotid body
- Mediastinal for aortic body
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
- Distant lymph node(s), NOS
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis
  - Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
# HEMATOLOGIC MALIGNANCIES

**LYMPH NODES AND LYMPHATIC STRUCTURES ABOVE AND BELOW THE DIAPHRAGM**

*Note:* The most common terms are included in this table. For a more complete listing of lymph nodes, see Appendix I.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ABOVE THE DIAPHRAGM</th>
<th>BELOW THE DIAPHRAGM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Axillary</td>
<td>Celiac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brachial (lateral axillary)</td>
<td>Colic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buccal (buccinator)</td>
<td>Femoral (superficial, inguinal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical, NOS</td>
<td>Gastric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epitrochlear</td>
<td>Hepatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facial</td>
<td>Ileocolic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hilar (bronchopulmonary)</td>
<td>Iliac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infraclavicular (subclavicular)</td>
<td>Inguinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal jugular</td>
<td>Internal iliac (hypogastric)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mastoid (post-/retro-auricular)</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
<td>Obturator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occipital</td>
<td>Pancreatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Para/peritracheal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parasternal (internal mammary)</td>
<td>Peyer’s patches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parotid</td>
<td>Popliteal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pectoral (anterior axillary)</td>
<td>Porta hepatis (portal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior triangle (spinal accessory)</td>
<td>Pyloric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preauricular</td>
<td>Retroperitoneal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prelaryngeal</td>
<td>Sacral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retropharyngeal</td>
<td>Spleen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scalene (inferior deep cervical)</td>
<td>Splenic (lineal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sublingual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submandibular (submaxillary)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submental</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscapular (posterior axillary)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supraclavicular (transverse cervical)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tonsil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thymus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waldeyer ring [ring of lymphoid tissue formed by the two palatine tonsils, the pharyngeal tonsil (adenoids) and the lingual tonsil]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*September 2019*  
*Summary Stage 2018 Coding Manual v1.7*  
*326*
HEMATOLOGIC MALIGNANCIES

LYMPHOMA

9590, 9596-9663, 9673-9699, 9702-9719, 9725-9726, 9735, 9737-9738, 9823, 9826-9827
(varying primary sites and histologies)

- See Summary Stage 2018 Manual, Appendix III for a detailed listing of primary site/histology combinations for this schema

9591 and Schema Discriminator 1: 3, 9 (C000-C440, C442-C689, C691-C694, C698-C809)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following schemas for the listed histologies

- C441, C690, C695-C696 (9590-9699, 9702-9719, 9725-9726, 9735, 9737-9738, 9823, 9826-9827): Lymphoma Ocular Adnexa
- C440, C442-C449, C510, C609, C632 (9597, 9680, 9708-9709, 9712, 9718-9719, 9726): Primary Cutaneous Lymphomas
- C700, C710-C719 (9680, 9699, 9700-9714): Brain
- C701, C709, C720-C725, C728-C729 (9680, 9699, 9700-9714): CNS Other
- C751-C753 (9680, 9699, 9700-9714): Intracranial Gland
- 9591 and Schema Discriminator 1: 1, 2 (C000-C440, C442-C689, C691-C694, C698-C809): HemeRetic

Note 3: Chapter includes the preferred terms based on the 2017 WHO Classification of Haematopoietic and Lymphoid Tissues

9590 Malignant lymphoma, NOS
9591 Non-Hodgkin lymphoma, NOS
9596 B-cell lymphoma, unclassifiable, with features intermediate between DLBCL and classic Hodgkin lymphoma
9597 Primary cutaneous follicle centre lymphoma
9650 Classical Hodgkin lymphoma
9651 Lymphocyte-rich classic Hodgkin lymphoma
9652 Mixed cellularity classic Hodgkin lymphoma
9653 Lymphocyte-depleted classic Hodgkin lymphoma
9659 Nodular lymphocyte predominant Hodgkin lymphoma
9663 Nodular sclerosis classic Hodgkin lymphoma
9673 Mantle cell lymphoma
9678 Primary effusion lymphoma
9679 Primary mediastinal (thymic) large B-cell lymphoma
9680 Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL)
9687 Burkitt lymphoma
9688 T-cell/histiocyte-rich large B-cell lymphoma
9689 Splenic marginal zone lymphoma
9690 Follicular lymphoma
9691 Follicular lymphoma, grade 2
9695 Follicular lymphoma, grade 1
9698 Follicular lymphoma, grade 3
9699 Extranodal marginal zone lymphoma of mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT lymphoma)
9702 Peripheral T-cell lymphoma, NOS
9705 Angioimmunoblastic T-cell lymphoma
9708 Subcutaneous panniculitis-like T-cell lymphoma
9709 Primary cutaneous peripheral T-cell lymphomas
9712 Intravascular large B-cell lymphoma
9714 Anaplastic large cell lymphoma, ALK-positive
9716 Hepatosplenic T-cell lymphoma
9717 Enteropathy-associated T-cell lymphoma
9718 Primary cutaneous anaplastic large cell lymphoma
9719 Extranodal NK/T-cell lymphoma, nasal type
9725 Hydroa vacciniforme-like lymphoma
9726 Primary cutaneous gamma-delta T-cell lymphoma
9735 Plasmablastic lymphoma
9737 ALK-positive large B-cell lymphoma
9738 HHV8-positive DLBCL, NOS
9823 Chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL)/small lymphocytic lymphoma
9826 Burkitt cell leukemia
9827 Adult T-cell leukemia/lymphoma

Note 4: Any mention of the terms including fixed, matted, mass in the hilum, mediastinum, retroperitoneum, and/or mesentery, palpable, enlarged, shotty, lymphadenopathy are all regarded as involvement for lymphomas when determining appropriate code.

Note 5: If there is peripheral blood or bone marrow involvement, code 7.
SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only

- Involvement of multiple nodal chains in the SAME lymph node region
- Multifocal involvement of one extralymphatic organ/site (except lung/liver) WITHOUT nodal involvement
- Single extralymphatic site WITHOUT nodal involvement
- Single lymph node region involved

2 Regional, NOS

- Bulky disease present
- Contiguous extension between extralymphatic sites and regional nodes
  - WITH or WITHOUT involvement of other nodal regions on SAME side of diaphragm
- Localized involvement of a single extralymphatic organ/site
  - WITH involvement of its regional lymph node(s) OR
  - WITH involvement of other lymph node(s) on the SAME side of the diaphragm
- Two or more lymph node regions involved SAME side of diaphragm

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Distant involvement
  - Diffuse or disseminated (multifocal) involvement of ONE extralymphatic organ/site
    - WITH associated lymph node involvement OR
  - Diffuse or disseminated (multifocal) involvement of ONE or MORE extralymphatic organ(s)/site(s)
    - WITH or WITHOUT associated lymph node involvement
  - Involvement of isolated extralymphatic organ in absence of involvement of adjacent lymph nodes, but in conjunction with disease in distant sites
  - Involvement of lymph node regions on BOTH sides of the diaphragm
    - OR nodes ABOVE the diaphragm involved WITH spleen involvement
  - Multifocal involvement of one extralymphatic organ/site WITH nodal involvement
  - Noncontiguous extralymphatic organ involvement in conjunction with nodal disease (two or more sites involved)

- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Blood/peripheral blood
  - Bone marrow
  - Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)
  - Liver
  - Lung (other than by direct extension in code 2)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
MYCOSIS FUNGOIDES

9700-9701 (C000-C002, C006, C440-C449, C510-C512, C518-C519, C600-C602, C608-C609, C632)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: For mycosis fungoides of sites other than those above, use the appropriate site-specific schema.

Note 3: Code 0 is not applicable for this chapter.

Note 4: All lymph node (regional and distant) involvement is coded as regional lymph node involvement.

Note 5: Visceral involvement is metastatic disease and should be questioned in the absence of node or blood involvement.

SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only (localized, NOS)

- MFCG Stage I
  - Less than 10% of skin surface, no tumors
  - Limited to patches, papules, or plaques
- MFCG Stage II
  - Greater than or equal to 10% of skin surface, no tumors
  - Generalized patches, papules, or plaques
- Not stated whether patches, papules, or plaques
  - % of body surface not stated, no tumors
  - Skin involvement, NOS: extent not stated, no tumors
2 Regional by direct extension only

- MFCG Stage III
  - Cutaneous tumor, size not stated
  - Generalized erythroderma (confluence of erythemia)
    - (greater than 50% of body involved with diffuse redness)
  - One or more tumors equal to 1 cm or greater
  - Sezary syndrome
  - Skin lesion described as tumor less than 1 cm

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Both clinically enlarged palpable lymph node(s) (adenopathy) AND
  - pathologically positive nodes
- Clinically enlarged palpable lymph node(s) (adenopathy) AND
  - either pathologically negative nodes or no pathological statement
- No clinically enlarged palpable lymph node(s) (adenopathy) BUT
  - pathologically positive lymph node(s)
- Dutch grade 1-4 OR NCI LN 0-4
  - Clone positive, negative or unknown
- Regional lymph node(s), NOS
  - Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved

- Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s) involved

- Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
  - MFCG Stage IV
    - Bone marrow
    - Involvement by at least one organ outside the skin, nodes, blood, or bone marrow
    - Liver
    - Spleen
    - Visceral (non-cutaneous, extranodal) involvement, pathologically confirmed
- Distant metastasis, NOS
  - Carcinomatosis

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
PRIMARY CUTANEOUS LYMPHOMAS (EXCLUDING MF AND SS)

9597, 9680, 9708-9709, 9712, 9718-9719, 9726

C440, C442-C449, C510, C609, C632
C440 Skin of lip, NOS
C442 External ear
C443 Skin of other and unspecified parts of face
C444 Skin of scalp and neck
C445 Skin of trunk
C446 Skin of upper limb and shoulder
C447 Skin of lower limb and hip
C448 Overlapping lesion of skin
C449 Skin, NOS
C510 Labium majus
C609 Penis
C632 Scrotum, NOS

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: Code 0 is not applicable for this chapter.

Note 3: See the Mycosis Fungoides chapter for Mycosis Fungoides (9700) and Sezary syndrome (9701).

Note 4: Chapter includes the preferred terms based on the 2017 WHO Classification of Haematopoietic and Lymphoid Tissues

9597 Primary cutaneous follicle center lymphoma
9680 Primary cutaneous diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, leg type
9708 Subcutaneous panniculitis-like T-cell lymphoma
9709 Primary cutaneous peripheral T-cell lymphomas
9712 Intravascular large B-cell lymphoma
9718 Primary cutaneous anaplastic large cell lymphoma
9719 Extrannodal NK/T-cell lymphoma, nasal type
9726 Primary cutaneous gamma-delta t-cell lymphoma
Note 5: If there is peripheral blood or bone marrow involvement, code 7.

SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only
   • Solitary lesion
   • Solitary skin involvement

2 Regional by direct extension only
   • Multiple lesions confined to one or two contiguous body regions
   • Multiple lesions, NOS
   • Regional skin involvement

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only
   • Cenrowal
   • Peripheral node region that drains an area of current or prior skin involvement
   • Regional lymph node(s), NOS
     o Lymph node(s), NOS

4 Regional by BOTH direct extension AND regional lymph node(s) involved
   • Codes (2) + (3)

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved
   • Distant site(s) (including further contiguous extension)
     o Blood/peripheral blood
     o Bone marrow
     o Extracutaneous non-lymph node disease present
     o Generalized skin involvement
     o Multiple lesions confined to discontiguous body regions
     o Multiple lesions confined to three or more contiguous body regions
     o Visceral (non-cutaneous) metastasis
   • Distant lymph node(s), NOS
   • Distant metastasis, NOS
     o Carcinomatosis
     o Distant metastasis WITH or WITHOUT distant lymph node(s)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
MYELOMA AND PLASMA CELL DISORDERS

9671 Lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma (except C441, C690, C695-C696)
9731 Plasmacytoma, NOS
9732 Plasma cell myeloma/multiple myeloma
9734 Plasmacytoma, extramedullary (except C441, C690, C695-C696)
9761 Waldenstrom Macroglobulinemia

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: Codes 0, 2, and 4 are not applicable for this chapter.

Note 3: Plasma cell myeloma/multiple myeloma (9732) is a widely disseminated plasma cell neoplasm, characterized by a single clone of plasma cells derived from B cells that grows in the bone marrow. It is always coded to 7 for systemic involvement.

Note 4: Lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma (9671) and Waldenstrom Macroglobulinemia (9761) are now collected with the plasma cell disorders. These are systemic diseases and should always be coded 7.

SUMMARY STAGE

1 Localized only

- Single plasmacytoma occurring in bone (osseous or medullary) (9731)
  - WITH or WITHOUT soft tissue extension
- Single plasmacytoma, NOS (9734)
  - Single plasmacytoma occurring outside of bone (extraosseous or extramedullary) (9731)

3 Regional lymph node(s) involved only

- Extraosseous plasmacytomas only (9734)
  - Regional lymph node(s), NOS
    - Lymph node(s), NOS
7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma (9671)
- Plasmacytomas (9731, 9734)
  - Multiple extraosseous or extramedullary plasmacytomas (9734)
  - Multiple osseous or medullary plasmacytomas (9731)
  - Multiple plasmacytomas, NOS (9731, 9734)
- Plasma cell myeloma (9732)
  - Multiple myeloma
  - Myeloma, NOS
- Waldenstrom Macroglobulinemia (9761)

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis (applicable for 9731 and 9734 only)
HEMERETIC

9724, 9727, 9740-9742, 9762-9809, 9811-9820, 9831-9920, 9931-9992

9591 and Schema Discriminator 1: 1, 2 (C000-C440, C442-C689, C691-C694, C698-C809)

9751, 9755-9759 (C000-C699, C739-C750, C754-C809)

9930 (C000-C440, C442-C689, C691-C694, C698-C809)

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

- Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

Note 2: See the following schemas for the listed histologies

- 9591 and Schema Discriminator 1: 3, 9 (C000-C440, C442-C689, C691-C694, C698-C809): Lymphoma
- 9751, 9755-9759 (C700, C710-C719): Brain
- 9751, 9755-9759 (C701, C709, C720-C725, C728-C729): CNS Other
- 9751, 9755-9759 (C751-C753): Intracranial Gland
- 9930 (C441, C690, C695-C696): Lymphoma Ocular Adnexa

Note 3: The following histologies can be localized (code 1), systemic (7) or unknown (9)

9740 Mast cell sarcoma
9751 Langerhans cell histiocytosis, disseminated (except C700-C729, C751-C753)
9755 Histiocytic sarcoma (except C700-C729, C751-C753)
9756 Langerhans cell sarcoma (except C700-C729, C751-C753)
9757 Interdigitating dendritic cell sarcoma (except C700-C729, C751-C753)
9758 Follicular dendritic cell sarcoma (except C700-C729, C751-C753)
9759 Fibroblastic reticular cell tumor (except C700-C729, C751-C753)
9930 Myeloid sarcoma (except C441, C690, C695-C696)
9971 Polymorphic PTLD

Note 4: For histologies listed in Note 2, it is possible to have lymph node involvement; however, at this time, lymph node involvement for these histologies is not collected.
Note 5: The following histologies are systemic (code 7):

9591 Splenic B-cell lymphoma/leukemia, unclassifiable (except C441, C690, C695-C696)
9724 Systemic EBV-positive T-cell lymphoma of childhood
9727 Blastic plasmacytoid dendritic cell neoplasm
9741 Systemic mastocytosis with an associated hematological neoplasm
9742 Mast cell leukemia
9762 Heavy chain diseases
9800 Leukemia, NOS
9801 Acute undifferentiated leukemia
9806 Mixed-phenotype acute leukemia with t(9;22)(q34.1;q11.2); BCR-ABL1
9807 Mixed-phenotype acute leukemia with t(v;11q23.3); KMT2A-rearranged
9808 Mixed-phenotype acute leukemia, B/myeloid, NOS
9809 Mixed-phenotype acute leukemia, T/myeloid, NOS
9811 B-lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, NOS
9812 B-lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma with t(9;22)(q34.1;q11.2); BCR-ABL1
9813 B-lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma with t(v;11q23.3); KMT2A-rearranged
9814 B-lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma with t(12;21)(p13.2;q22.1); ETV6-RUNX1
9815 B-lymphoblastic/lymphoma with hyperdiploidy
9816 B-lymphoblastic/lymphoma with hypodiploidy (hypodiploid ALL)
9817 B-lymphoblastic/lymphoma with t(5;14)(q31.1;q32.1); IGH/IL3
9818 B-lymphoblastic/lymphoma with t(1;19)(q23;p13.3); TCF3-PBX1
9820 Lymphoid leukemia, NOS
9831 T-cell large granular lymphocytic leukemia
9832 Prolymphocytic leukemia, NOS
9833 B-cell prolymphocytic leukemia
9834 T-cell prolymphocytic leukemia
9837 T-lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma
9840 Pure erythroid leukemia
9860 Myeloid leukemia, NOS
9861 Acute myeloid leukemia, NOS
9863 Chronic myeloid leukemia
9865 Acute myeloid leukemia with t(6;9)(p23;q34.1); DEK-NUP214
9866 Acute promyelocytic leukemia with PML-RARA
9867 Acute myelomonocytic leukemia
9869 Acute myeloid leukemia with inv(3)(q21.3q26.2) or t(3;3)(q21.3;q26.2); RBM15-MKL1
9870 Acute basophilic leukemia
9871 Acute myeloid leukemia with inv(16)(p13.1q22) or t(16;16)(p13.1;q22); CBFB-MYH11
9872 Acute myeloid leukemia, minimal differentiation
9873 Acute myeloid leukemia without maturation
9874 Acute myeloid leukemia with maturation
9875 Chronic myeloid leukemia, BCR-ABL1-positive
9876 Atypical chronic myeloid leukemia BCR-ABL1-negative
9891 Acute monoblastic and monocytic leukemia
9895 Acute myeloid leukemia with myelodysplasia-related changes
9896 Acute myeloid leukemia with t(8;21)(q22;q22.1), RUNXI-RUNX1T1
9897 Acute myeloid leukemia with t(9;11)(p21.3;q23.3); KMT2A-MLLT3
9898 Myeloid leukemia associated with Down Syndrome
9910 Acute megakaryoblastic leukemia
9911 Acute myeloid leukemia (megakaryoblastic) with t(1;22)(p13.3;q13.1); RBM15-MKL1
9920 Therapy-related myeloid neoplasms
9931 Acute panmyelosis with myelofibrosis
9940 Hairy cell leukemia
9945 Chronic myelomonocytic leukemia, NOS
9946 Juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia
9948 Aggressive NK-cell leukemia
9950 Polycythemia vera
9961 Primary myelofibrosis
9962 Essential thrombocytemia
9963 Chronic neutrophilic leukemia
9964 Chronic eosinophilic leukemia, NOS
9965 Myeloid/lymphoid neoplasms with PDGFRα rearrangement
9966 Myeloid/lymphoid neoplasm with PDGFRβ rearrangement
9967 Myeloid/lymphoid neoplasm with FGFR1 rearrangement
9975 Myelodysplastic/myeloproliferative neoplasm, unclassifiable
9980 Myelodysplastic syndrome with single lineage dysplasia
9982 Myelodysplastic syndrome with ring sideroblasts and single lineage dysplasia
9983 Myelodysplastic syndrome with excess blasts
9985 Myelodysplastic syndrome with multilineage dysplasia
9986 Myelodysplastic syndrome with isolated del(5q)
9989 Myelodysplastic syndrome, unclassifiable
9991 Refractory neutropenia
9992 Refractory thrombocytopenia

Note 6: Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

Note 7: Codes 0, 2, 3, 4, and 5 are not applicable for this chapter.

**SUMMARY STAGE**

1 Localized only

- Localized disease
- (Single/solitary/unifocal/isolated)
- See Notes 2 and 3

7 Distant site(s)/lymph node(s) involved

- Systemic disease
- See Note 4

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis
ILL-DEFINED OTHER

C420-C424, C761-C765, C767-C768, C770-C775, C778-C779: 8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C809: 8000-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701

C760 and Schema Discriminator 1: Occult Head and Neck Lymph Nodes: 0, 1 (8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701)

C760-C765, C767-C768, C809
C42 and C77, Other than Hematopoietic neoplasms (9590-9992)

C420 Blood
C421 Bone marrow
C422 Spleen
C423 Reticuloendothelial system, NOS
C424 Hematopoietic system, NOS

Other and ill-defined sites of
C760 Head, face or neck, NOS
C761 Thorax, NOS
C762 Abdomen, NOS
C763 Pelvis, NOS
C764 Upper limb, NOS
C765 Lower limb, NOS
C767 Other ill-defined sites
C768 Overlapping lesion of ill-defined sites

Lymph nodes of
C770 Lymph nodes of head, face and neck
C771 Lymph nodes of intrathoracic
C772 Lymph nodes of intra-abdominal
C773 Lymph nodes of axilla or arm
C774 Lymph nodes of inguinal region or leg
C775 Lymph nodes of pelvis
C778 Lymph nodes of multiple regions
C779 Lymph nodes, NOS
C809 Unknown primary site

Note 1: The following sources were used in the development of this chapter

• Collaborative Stage Data Collection System, version 02.05: https://cancerstaging.org/cstage/Pages/default.aspx

**Note 2:** *Schema Discriminator 1: Occult Head and Neck Lymph Nodes* is used to discriminate between Cervical Lymph Nodes and Unknown Primary Tumor of the Head and Neck, Ill-Defined Other and Soft Tissue Other when primary site is C760.

**Note 3:** See the following schemas for the listed histologies

- C760 (8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8941, 9700-9701: Schema Discriminator 1 Occult Head and Neck Lymph Nodes: 2, 3, 4, 5): *Cervical Lymph Nodes and Unknown Primary Tumors of the Head and Neck*
- C760 (8941: Schema Discriminator 1 Occult Head and Neck Lymph Nodes: 0,1): *Soft Tissue*
- C809 (8190, 8247): *Merkel Cell Skin*
- 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582: *Soft Tissue*
- 8935-8936: *GIST*
- 9140: *Kaposi Sarcoma*

**Note 4:** Summary Stage is the only applicable staging system for this site/histology/schema.

**Note 5:** Codes 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, and 7 are not applicable for this chapter.

**SUMMARY STAGE**

9 Unknown if extension or metastasis; unstageable
Appendix I: Lymph Node/Lymph Node Chain Reference Table

Use this table with the Primary Site and Histology Rules to determine whether involved lymph nodes are in a single ICD-O-3 lymph node region or in multiple ICD-O-3 lymph node regions.

This table contains the names of lymph nodes that have the capsule and sinus structure of true lymph nodes. Lymphoid tissue such as that in the GI tract, tonsils, etc., is not represented in this table.

*Note: Pathology reports may identify lymph nodes within most organs, the most common being breast, parotid gland, lung, and pancreas. The lymph nodes in these organs are called intra- (organ name) lymph nodes such as intramammary lymph nodes. We have included the most common intra-organ lymph nodes on this table. For an intra-organ lymph node not listed on the table, code to the ICD-O-3 topography code for that organ’s regional lymph node chain(s).

*The right and left are separate regions per AJCC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lymph Node/Lymph Node Chain</th>
<th>ICD-O-3 Code</th>
<th>ICD-O-3 Lymph Node Region(s)</th>
<th>TNM Staging</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anorectal (pararectal)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior axillary (pectoral)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior cecal (prececal)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior deep cervical (laterotracheal, recurrent laryngeal, recurrent pharyngeal)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior jugular</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior mediastinal</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Infrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortic (ascending, lateral, lumbar, subaortic, NOS)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortico-pulmonary window (subaortic)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apical (subclavian)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendiceal</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apical axillary (deep axillary, Level III axillary)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aselli’s glands (nodes near pancreas)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auricular (infraauricular, postauricular, preauricular, retroauricular, NOS)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axillary (anterior, brachial, deep, lateral, superficial, NOS)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axillary (Level I [low axillary, superficial axillary], Level II, Level III [apical, deep])</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Infraclavicular, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azygos (lower parastracheal)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Infrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brachial (lateral axillary)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brachiocephalic</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bronchial</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Infrathoracic</td>
<td>Hilar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bronchopulmonary (hilar) (proximal lobar) (pulmonary root)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Infrathoracic</td>
<td>Hilar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buccal (buccinator)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymph Node/Lymph Node Chain</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Code</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Lymph Node Region(s)</td>
<td>TNM Staging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calot’s node (cystic, cysto-hepatic triangle or hepato-biliary triangle)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac (cardial)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardioesophageal (tracheobronchial, tracheal bifurcation)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carinal (tracheal bifurcation, tracheobronchial)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caval (para-)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cecal (anterior, posterior, prececal, retrocecal, NOS)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celiac</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central compartment (paralaryngeal, prelaryngeal [Delphian]) adjacent to thyroid gland</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical, NOS</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical paratracheal</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical periesophageal</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloquet’s node (inguinal)</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Inguinal region or leg</td>
<td>Inguino-femoral, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colic (ileocolic, left, mesocolic, middle, right, NOS)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common bile duct(pericholedochal)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common hepatic</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common iliac</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cubital</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystic (Calot’s node, cysto-hepatic triangle or hepato-biliary triangle)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystic duct</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep axillary</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep cervical (lower, middle, upper, NOS)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delphian node (precricoid)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deltopectoral</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diaphragmatic, sub</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duodenal</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epicolic (Foramen of Winslow, omental)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epitrochlear</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esophageal (para-, peri-)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esophageal groove</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External iliac</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facial (buccal, buccinator, nasolabial)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Femoral (superficial inguinal)</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Inguinal region or leg</td>
<td>Inguino-femoral, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foramen of Winslow (epicolic, omental)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastric (inferior, left, right, superior, NOS)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymph Node/Lymph Node Chain</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Code</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Lymph Node Region(s)</td>
<td>TNM Staging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrocolic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastroduodenal</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastroepiploic (gastro-omental)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrohepatic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastropancreatic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerota's node (promontorial, middle sacral)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater curvature</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater omentum (greater omental)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groin</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Inguinal region or leg</td>
<td>Inguino-femoral, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemorrhoidal (inferior, middle, superior, NOS)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatic (hepatic artery, hepatic pedicle, inferior vena cava, lineal, porta hepatitis [hilar], NOS)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatic artery</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatic pedicle</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatoduodenal ligament (hilar)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highest deep inguinal (Rosenmuller or Node of Cloquet)</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Inguinal region or leg</td>
<td>Inguino-femoral, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hilar ([in hilus of liver], hepatoduodenal ligament, porta hepatitis, portal, splenic, NOS)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hilar (bronchial, bronchopulmonary, proximal lobar, pulmonary root)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Hilar, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypogastric (internal iliac)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ileocecic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iliac (common, external, internal [hypogastric, obturator])</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior deep cervical (scalene)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior gastric (right, NOS)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior hemorrhoidal</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior (deep) jugular</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior mesenteric</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior rectal (hemorrhoidal)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior phrenic vein</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intra-thoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior vena cava</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infraauricular</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infraclavicular (subclavicular)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Infraclavicular, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrapyloric</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infundibulopelvic (utero-ovarian)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymph Node/Lymph Node Chain</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Code</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Lymph Node Region(s)</td>
<td>TNM Staging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inguinal (deep, sublingual, superficial, NOS)</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Inguinal region or leg</td>
<td>Inguino-femoral, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interaortocaval</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intercostal</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interlobar (within the lung) (intrapulmonary)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal iliac (hypogastric, obturator)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal jugular (upper deep cervical)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face, and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal mammary (parasternal)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interpectoral (Rotter’s node)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intestinal</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrabrachial, NOS</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Hilar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intramammary</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrapancreatic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intraparotid</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrapelvic</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrapulmonary (segmental, subsegmental)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jugular (anterior, inferior [deep], internal, lateral, lower, mid, superior, NOS)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jugulodigastric (subdigastric)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jugulo-omohyoid (supraomohyoid)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral aortic (ascending, lumbar, subaortic)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral axillary (brachial)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral compartment (jugular, mid and lower; supraclavicular; upper deep jugular; spinal accessory; retropharyngeal; submandibular; submental)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral jugular</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laterosacral (lateral sacral)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laterotracheal (anterior deep cervical)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left colic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left gastric (superior gastric)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left gastrocolic (superior gastrocolic)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left supraclavicular (Virchow’s node, Troser’s node)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face, and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg/Lower limb</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Inguinal region or leg</td>
<td>Inguino-femoral, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser curvature</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser omentum (lesser omental)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level I axillary (low axillary) (superficial axillary)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Infraclavicular, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymph Node/Lymph Node Chain</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Code</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Lymph Node Region(s)</td>
<td>TNM Staging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level II axillary</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Infracavicular, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level III axillary (deep axillary, high axillary)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Infracavicular, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lineal (splenic)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lobar (intrapulmonary)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Hilar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lobar (proximal, pulmonary)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Hilar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low axillary (Level I axillary)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Infracavicular, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower deep cervical</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower jugular</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower paratracheal (azygos)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower periesophageal (intrathoracic esophagus)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower peritracheal</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower thoracic paraesophageal</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumbar aortic (ascending, lateral, subaortic)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandibular</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mastoid (postauricular, retroauricular, NOS)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mediastinal (anterior, posterior, superior, NOS)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mesenteric (inferior, sigmoid [sigmoidal], superior, NOS)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mesocolic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid jugular</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midcolic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle deep cervical</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle (right) colic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle hemorrhoidal</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle sacral (Gerota’s node, promontorial)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle thoracic paraesophageal</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasolabial (facial)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Node of Cloquet’s or Rosenmuller (highest deep inguinal)</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Inguinal region or leg</td>
<td>Inguino-femoral, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obturator (internal iliac)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occipital (suboccipital)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreatic (Aselli’s glands [nodes near pancreas], parapancreatic; peripancreatic, NOS)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreaticoduodenal (anterior, posterior, NOS)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymph Node/Lymph Node Chain</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Code</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Lymph Node Region(s)</td>
<td>TNM Staging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreaticosplenic (pancreaticolineal)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parabronchial (peribronchial)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paracardinal</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paracaval</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paracervical</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paracolic (pericolic)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paraesophageal</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paralaryngeal</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parametrial</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parapancractic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parapharyngeal</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pararectal (anorectal)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parasternal (internal mammary)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paratracheal (lower, NOS)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parotid (peri-, NOS)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pectoral (anterior axillary)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic, NOS</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peri-aortic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peri-parotid</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peri-thymic</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peribronchial (parabronchial)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pericardial (pericardiac)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pericaval</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pericoledochal (common bile duct)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pericolic (paracolic)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periduodenal</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periesophageal</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perigastric (except cardiac)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peripancreatic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periportal</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periprostatic</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perirectal</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periparotid</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perithyroidal</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peritracheal (lower)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periureteral</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perivesical</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharyngeal (Delphian node, prepharyngeal, retropharyngeal, NOS)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phrenic vein (inferior, superior, NOS)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intra-thoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Popliteal</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Inguinal region or leg</td>
<td>Inguino-femoral, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porta hepatis (in hilus of liver)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymph Node/Lymph Node Chain</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Code</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Lymph Node Region(s)</td>
<td>TNM Staging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portal (portal vein)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postauricular (mastoid, retroauricular)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior axillary (subscapular)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior cecal (retrocecal)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior cervical (spinal accessory)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior mediastinal (tracheoesophageal)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postglandular</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior triangle</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postvascular</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preaortic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preauricular</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Precarinal</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prececal (anterior cecal)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Precricoid (Delphian node)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preglandular</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepharyngeal (Delphian node), adjacent to thyroid gland; anterior to thyroid isthmus</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presacral</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presymphseal</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pretracheal</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prevascular</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Promontorial (Gerota’s node, middle sacral)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proximal lobar (bronchopulmonary, hilar, pulmonary root)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Hilar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proximal mesentery</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary ligament</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary (pulmonary root, NOS)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Hilar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyloric (infrapyloric, subpyloric, suprapyloric)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectal (superior, NOS)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recurrent laryngeal (anterior deep cervical, laterotracheal)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recurrent pharyngeal (anterior deep cervical)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal artery</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal hilar</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retroaortic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retro-auricular (mastoid, postauricular)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrocaval</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrocecal (posterior cecal)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrocrural</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intra-thoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retropancreatic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymph Node/Lymph Node Chain</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Code</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Lymph Node Region(s)</td>
<td>TNM Staging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retroperitoneal</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retropharyngeal</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrotacheal (tracheal)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right colic</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right gastric</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosenmuller or Node of Cloquet (highest deep inguinal)</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Inguinal region or leg</td>
<td>Inguino-femoral, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotter’s nodes (interpectoral between major and minor pectoralis)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rouviere’s node (retropharyngeal)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sacral (lateral sacral, laterosacral, middle sacral, presacral, NOS)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sacral (uterosacral)</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scolene (inferior deep cervical)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Segmental (intrapulmonary, subsegmental)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sigmoid (sigmoidal mesenteric, NOS)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sister Mary Joseph</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spermatic vein</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Inguinal region or leg</td>
<td>Inguino-femoral, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal accessory (posterior cervical)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Splenic (hilar, lineal)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subaortic (ascending, lateral, lumbar)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subcapsular (posterior axillary)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Axillary, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subcarinal</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subclavian (apical)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subclavicular (infraclavicular)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Infraclavicular, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subdigastric (jugulodigastric)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subinguinal (superficial inguinal)</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Inguinal region or leg</td>
<td>Inguino-femoral, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sublingual</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submandibular (submaxillary)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submaxillary (submandibular)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submental</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suboccipital (occipital)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subpleural (in the periphery of the lung)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppypyloric</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Para-aortic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsegmental (intrapulmonary, segmental)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substellar</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superficial axillary (Level I axillary)</td>
<td>C773</td>
<td>Axilla or arm</td>
<td>Infraclavicular, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superficial inguinal (femoral, subinguinal)</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Inguinal region or leg</td>
<td>Inguino-femoral, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior gastric (left gastric)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymph Node/Lymph Node Chain</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Code</td>
<td>ICD-O-3 Lymph Node Region(s)</td>
<td>TNM Staging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior gastrocolic (left gastrocolic)</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior hemorrhoidal</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior hilum</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior jugular</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior mediastinal</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior mesenteric</td>
<td>C772</td>
<td>Intra-abdominal</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior phrenic vein</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior rectal (hemorrhoidal)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supraclavicular (transverse cervical)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supraomohyoid (jugulo-omohyoid)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thoracic</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tibial</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Inguinal region or leg</td>
<td>Inguino-femoral, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracheal (retrotracheal, NOS)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracheal bifurcation (carinal, tracheobronchial)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracheobronchial (carinal, tracheal bifurcation)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracheoesophageal (posterior mediastinal)</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse cervical (supraclavicular)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face, and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trosier’s node (left supraclavicular)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face, and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper deep cervical (internal jugular)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face, and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper thoracic paraesophageal</td>
<td>C771</td>
<td>Intrathoracic</td>
<td>Mediastinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utero-ovarian (infundibulopelvic)</td>
<td>C775</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterosacral</td>
<td>C774</td>
<td>Pelvic</td>
<td>Pelvic, right and left*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virchow’s node (left supraclavicular)</td>
<td>C770</td>
<td>Head, face, and neck</td>
<td>Cervical, right and left*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The right and left are separate regions per AJCC
Appendix II: Summary Stage 2018 (SS2018) Chapters Based on Primary Site and/or Histology—Solid Tumors (8000-9582)

This appendix covers the Summary Stage chapters related to Solid Tumors.

- **Exception 1:** Mycosis Fungoides (9700) and Sezary Syndrome (9701) for all primary sites are included in this appendix.

- **Exception 2:** For hematopoietic histologies 9680, 9699, 9700-9714, 9751-9755, see the appropriate Summary Stage chapter in this Appendix for the following primary sites:
  - C700, C710-C719: Brain
  - C701, C709, C720-C729: CNS Other
  - C751, C752, C753: Intracranial Gland

- **Exception 3:** The following primary sites with behavior of /0 (benign) or /1 (borderline) are collected in the following schemas:
  - C700, C710-C719: Brain
  - C701, C709, C720-C729: CNS Other
  - C751, C752, C753: Intracranial Gland

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Site(s)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Histology</th>
<th>SS2018 Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C000-C539, C571-C809</td>
<td>All sites (except C54_, C559, C569, C570)</td>
<td>8935-8936</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal Tumors (GIST)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C000-C699, C739-C750, C754-C809</td>
<td>All sites (except C70_, C71_, C72_, C751, C752, C753)</td>
<td>9140</td>
<td>Kaposi Sarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C000-C002, C006</td>
<td>External lip (vermillion border) (upper, lower, NOS); Commissure of lip</td>
<td>8000-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8940, 8982</td>
<td>Skin (except eyelid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C000-C002, C006</td>
<td>External lip (vermillion border) (upper, lower, NOS); Commissure of lip</td>
<td>8720-8790</td>
<td>Melanoma Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C000-C002, C006</td>
<td>External lip (vermillion border) (upper, lower, NOS); Commissure of lip</td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8941-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C000-C002, C006</td>
<td>External lip (vermillion border) (upper, lower, NOS); Commissure of lip</td>
<td>9700-9701</td>
<td>Mycosis Fungoides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C000-C006, C008-C009</td>
<td>Lip</td>
<td>8041, 8190, 8247</td>
<td>Merkel Cell Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C003-C005, C008-C069, C090-C148, C300-C329</td>
<td>Head and Neck (excluding C079, C80_)</td>
<td>8720-8790</td>
<td>Melanoma Head and Neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Site(s)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>SS2018 Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C003-C005, C008-C009</td>
<td>Lip (excluding external lip, commissure of lip)</td>
<td>8000-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8982, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Lip Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C019</td>
<td>Base of tongue, NOS</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Oropharynx Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C020-C023, C028-C029</td>
<td>Other sites of tongue (excluding Lingual Tonsil)</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8982, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Tongue Anterior Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C024</td>
<td>Lingual tonsil</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Oropharynx Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C030-C031, C039, C062</td>
<td>Gum Retromolar area</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8982, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Gum Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C040-C041, C048-C049</td>
<td>Floor of mouth</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8982, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Floor of Mouth Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C050</td>
<td>Hard palate</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8982, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Palate Hard Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C051, C052</td>
<td>Soft palate, Uvula</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Oropharynx Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C058-C059</td>
<td>Other sites of palate</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8982, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Mouth Other Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C060-C061</td>
<td>Cheek mucosa, vestibule of mouth</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8982, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Buccal Mucosa Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C068-C069</td>
<td>Other sites of mouth</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8982, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Mouth Other Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Site(s)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>SS2018 Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C079, C080-C081, C088-C089</td>
<td>Parotid gland, Other and unspecified major salivary glands</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8941, 8974, 8980, 8982, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940, 8950-8973, 8975, 8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Major Salivary Glands Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C090-C091, C098-C099</td>
<td>Tonsil</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Oropharynx Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C100, C102-C104, C108-C109</td>
<td>Oropharynx</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Oropharynx Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C101</td>
<td>Anterior surface of epiglottis</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Larynx Supraglottic Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C110, C112-C113, C118-C119</td>
<td>Nasopharynx (excluding Pharyngeal tonsil)</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Nasopharynx Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C111</td>
<td>Posterior wall of nasopharynx</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701 (Schema Discriminator 1-Nasopharynx/Pharyngeal: 1), 8000-8700, 9700-9701 (Schema Discriminator 1-Nasopharynx/Pharyngeal: 2), 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Nasopharynx Oropharynx Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C129, C130-C132, C138-C139</td>
<td>Pyriform sinus, Hypopharynx</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Hypopharynx Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C140, C142-C148</td>
<td>Other lip, oral cavity and pharynx sites</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Pharynx Other Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C150-C155, C158-C159</td>
<td>Esophagus</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Esophagus (including GE Junction) Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Site(s)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>SS2018 Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C160</td>
<td>Esophagus GE Junction/Cardia</td>
<td>8000-8149, 8154, 8157, 8160-8231, 8243-8248, 8250-8682, 8690-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701 (Schema Discriminator 1-EsophagusGEJunction (EGJ)/Stomach: 2)</td>
<td>Esophagus (including GE Junction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8000-8149, 8154, 8157, 8160-8231, 8243-8248, 8250-8682, 8690-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701 (Schema Discriminator 1-EsophagusGEJunction (EGJ)/Stomach: 0, 3, 9)</td>
<td>Stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8150-8153, 8155-8156, 8158, 8240-8242, 8249, 8683</td>
<td>Stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C161-C166, C168-C169</td>
<td>Stomach (excluding Esophagus GE Junction/Cardia)</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C170-C173, C178-C179</td>
<td>Small intestine</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Small Intestine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C181</td>
<td>Appendix</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Appendix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C180, C182-C189, C199, C209</td>
<td>Colon and Rectum (excluding Appendix)</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Colon and Rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C210, C211-C212, C218</td>
<td>Anus, NOS Anal Canal, Cloacogenic zone and overlapping lesions</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Anus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Site(s)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>SS2018 Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C220</td>
<td>Liver</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C221</td>
<td>Intrahepatic bile duct</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8980, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8975, 8981-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Intrahepatic Bile Ducts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C239</td>
<td>Gallbladder</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Gallbladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C240</td>
<td>Extrahepatic bile duct</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Extrahepatic Bile Ducts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C241</td>
<td>Ampulla of Vater</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Ampulla of Vater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C248-C249</td>
<td>Other biliary sites</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Biliary Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C240-C241,</td>
<td>Other and unspecified parts of biliary tract</td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C250-C254,</td>
<td>Pancreas</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8971, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8970, 8972-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C257-C259</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C260, C268-C269</td>
<td>Other gastrointestinal sites</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Digestive Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C300, C310,</td>
<td>Nasal cavity, Maxillary sinus, Ethmoid sinus</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8941, 8982, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940, 8950-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Nasal Cavity and Paranasal Sinuses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C311</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C301</td>
<td>Middle Ear</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Middle Ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C312-C313,</td>
<td>Other accessory sinuses</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Sinus Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C318-C319</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C320</td>
<td>Glottis</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Larynx Glottic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C321</td>
<td>Supraglottis</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Larynx Supraglottic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C322</td>
<td>Subglottis</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Larynx Subglottic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C323, C328,</td>
<td>Other larynx sites</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Larynx Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C329</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Site(s)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>SS2018 Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C320-C323, C328-C329</td>
<td>Larynx</td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C339</td>
<td>Trachea</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Trachea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C340-C343, C348-C349</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8972, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Lung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C340-C343, C348-C349</td>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>9050-9053</td>
<td>Pleural Mesothelioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C380-C384, C388</td>
<td>Heart, Mediastinum, overlapping lesions</td>
<td>8000-8803, 8810-8921, 8932-8934, 8940-8990, 9000-9016, 9030, 9040-9043, 9045-9137, 9141-9230, 9240-9580, 9582, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Heart, Mediastinum, and Pleura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C384</td>
<td>Pleura</td>
<td>8000-8803, 8810-8921, 8932-8934, 8940-8990, 9000-9016, 9030, 9040-9043, 9045, 9054-9137, 9141-9230, 9240-9580, 9582, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Heart, Mediastinum, and Pleura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C380-C384, C388</td>
<td>Heart, Mediastinum, and Pleura</td>
<td>8804-8806, 8930-8931, 8991, 9020, 9044, 9231, 9581</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C390, C398-C399</td>
<td>Other respiratory, intrathoracic organs</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Respiratory Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C390, C398-C399</td>
<td>Other respiratory, intrathoracic organs</td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C400-C403, C408-C414, C418-C419</td>
<td>Bones, Joints and Articular Cartilage</td>
<td>8000-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C420-C424</td>
<td>Hematopoietic and Reticuloendothelial Systems</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Ill-Defined Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C420-C424</td>
<td>Hematopoietic and Reticuloendothelial Systems</td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Site(s)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>SS2018 Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C440, C442-C449</td>
<td>Skin (excluding Skin eyelid, C441)</td>
<td>8000-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8940, 8982, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8941-8981, 8983-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Skin (except eyelid) Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C441</td>
<td>Eyelid</td>
<td>8000-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8940-8941, 8980, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8950-8975, 8981-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Skin Eyelid Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C440-C449</td>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>8041, 8190, 8247, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Merkel Cell Skin Melanoma Skin Mycosis Fungoides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C470-C476, C478-C479</td>
<td>Peripheral nerves</td>
<td>8000-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Site(s)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>SS2018 Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C481, C482, C488</td>
<td>Peritoneum (Sex: 2, 6)</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8806, 8822, 8930-8931, 8933, 8950, 8960, 8980, 9000, 9050, 9052, 9060, 9070-9071, 9073, 9080, 9085, 9090-9091, 9100, 9110, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Ovary and Primary Peritoneal Carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peritoneum (Sex: 1, 3, 5, 9)</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8822, 8933, 8950, 8960, 8980, 9000, 9050, 9052, 9060, 9070-9071, 9073, 9080, 9085, 9090-9091, 9100, 9110, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Retroperitoneum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peritoneum</td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8803, 8810-8821, 8823-8921, 8932, 8934, 8940-8941, 8951-8959, 8963-8975, 8981-8990, 9010-9016, 9030-9043, 9045, 9051, 9053-9055, 9061-9065, 9072, 9081-9084, 9086, 9101-9105, 9120-9137, 9141-9230, 9240-9580, 9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8804-8805, 8991, 9020, 9044, 9231, 9581</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C490-C496, C498-C499</td>
<td>Connective &amp; Other Soft tissues</td>
<td>8000-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C500</td>
<td>Nipple</td>
<td>8720-8790</td>
<td>Melanoma Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C501-C506, C508-C509</td>
<td>Breast (excluding nipple)</td>
<td>8720-8790</td>
<td>Breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C500-C506, C508-C509</td>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8982-8983, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-8981, 8990-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C510-C512, C518-C519</td>
<td>Vulva</td>
<td>8000-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 9020, 9071, 8041, 8190, 8247, 8720-8790, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9016, 9030-9070, 9072-9137, 9141-9582, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Vulva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Merkel Cell Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Melanoma Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mycosis Fungoides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Site(s)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>SS2018 Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C529</td>
<td>Vagina</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8933, 8980, 9071, 9110, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Vagina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8932, 8934, 8940-8975, 8981-9070, 9072-9105, 9120-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C530-C531, C538-C539</td>
<td>Cervix</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8805, 8933, 8980, 9110, 9581, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Cervix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8804, 8806-8932, 8934, 8940-8975, 8981-9105, 9120-9137, 9141-9580, 9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C540-C543, C548-C549, C559</td>
<td>Corpus uteri</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8950, 8980, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Corpus Carcinoma and Carcinosarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Uterus, NOS</td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8941, 8951-8975, 8981-9137, 9140-9582</td>
<td>Corpus Sarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C569</td>
<td>Ovary</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8806, 8810, 8815, 8822, 8825, 8890, 8930-8931, 8933, 8935-8936, 8950, 8960, 8980, 9000, 9050, 9052, 9060, 9070-9071, 9073, 9080, 9085, 9090-9091, 9100, 9110, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Ovary and Primary Peritoneal Carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8805, 8811-8814, 8820-8821, 8823-8824, 8826-8881, 8891-8921, 8932, 8934, 8940-8941, 8951-8959, 8963-8975, 8981-8991, 9010-9045, 9051, 9053-9055, 9061-9065, 9072, 9081-9084, 9086, 9101-9105, 9120-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Site(s)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>SS2018 Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C571-C574</td>
<td>Broad ligament, Round ligament, Parametrium, Uterine adnexa</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Adnexa Uterine Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C577-C579</td>
<td>Other sites of female genital tract</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Genital Female Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C589</td>
<td>Placenta</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9100-9105, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9091, 9110-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Placenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C600-C602, C608-C609</td>
<td>Penis</td>
<td>8000-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8041, 8190, 8247, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Penis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8004-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8041, 8190, 8247, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Merkel Cell Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8004-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8041, 8190, 8247, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Melanoma Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8004-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8041, 8190, 8247, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Mycosis Fungoides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8004-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8041, 8190, 8247, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C619</td>
<td>Prostate</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Prostate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Site(s)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>SS2018 Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C630-C631, C637-C639</td>
<td>Other sites of male genital tract</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Genital Male Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C632</td>
<td>Scrotum</td>
<td>8000-8040, 8042-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8041, 8190, 8247, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Genital Male Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Merkel Cell Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Melanoma Skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mycosis Fungoides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C649</td>
<td>Kidney</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C659, C669</td>
<td>Renal pelvis Ureter</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Kidney Renal Pelvis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C670-C679</td>
<td>Bladder</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C680</td>
<td>Urethra</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Urethra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C681, C688, C689</td>
<td>Other sites of urinary system</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Urinary Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Site(s)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>SS2018 Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C690-C696, C698-C699</td>
<td>Eye</td>
<td>8930-8931, 8991, 9020, 9180, 9231 9510-9514</td>
<td>Soft Tissue Retinoblastoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C690</td>
<td>Conjunctiva</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701 8720-8790 8710-8714, 8800-8921, 8932-8934, 8940-8990, 9000-9016, 9030-9137, 9141-9175, 9181-9230, 9240-9509, 9520-9582</td>
<td>Conjunctiva Melanoma Conjunctiva Orbital Sarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C693 C694</td>
<td>Choroid Ciliary body</td>
<td>8000-8700, 9700-9701 8720-8790 8710-8714, 8800-8921, 8932-8934, 8940-8990, 9000-9016, 9030-9137, 9141-9175, 9181-9230, 9240-9509, 9520-9582</td>
<td>Eye Other Melanoma Uvea Orbital Sarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C698, C699</td>
<td>Other sites of eye</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701 8710-8714, 8800-8921, 8932-8934, 8940-8990, 9000-9016, 9030-9137, 9141-9175, 9181-9230, 9240-9509, 9520-9582</td>
<td>Eye Other Orbital Sarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Site(s)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>SS2018 Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C700 C710-C719</td>
<td>Cerebral meninges Brain</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8802, 8810, 8815, 8850, 8890, 8900, 9064, 9070-9071, 9080, 9084-9085, 9100-9105, 9120, 9133, 9140, 9180, 9220, 9362, 9364, 9380-9540, 9680, 9699, 9700-9714, 9751-9759</td>
<td>Brain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C701 C709 C720 C721 C728, C729</td>
<td>Spinal meninges Meninges, NOS Spinal cord Cauda equina Other sites of brain, central nervous system</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8802, 8810, 8815, 8850, 8890, 8900, 9064, 9070-9071, 9080, 9084-9085, 9100-9105, 9120, 9133, 9140, 9180, 9220, 9362, 9364, 9380-9540, 9680, 9699, 9700-9714, 9751-9759</td>
<td>CNS Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C723</td>
<td>Optic nerve</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9064, 9070, 9080, 9084-9085, 9100, 9140, 9180, 9362, 9380-9420, 9423-9472, 9474-9493, 9501-9521, 9523, 9531-9539, 9680, 9699, 9700-9714, 9751-9759</td>
<td>CNS Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8930-8931, 8991, 9020, 9231</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8921, 8932-8934, 8940-8990, 9000-9016, 9030-9063, 9065, 9071-9073, 9081-9083, 9086-9091, 9101-9137, 9141-9175, 9181-9230, 9240-9361, 9363-9373, 9421, 9473, 9500, 9522, 9530, 9540-9582</td>
<td>Orbital Sarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Site(s)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>SS2018 Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C739</td>
<td>Thyroid gland</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Thyroid (including Medullary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C740-C741, C749</td>
<td>Adrenal gland</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Adrenal Gland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C750</td>
<td>Parathyroid gland</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Parathyroid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C754, C758, C759</td>
<td>Carotid body Other endocrine gland sites</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701, 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Endocrine Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Site(s)</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>SS2018 Chapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C755</td>
<td>Aortic body and other paraganglioma</td>
<td>8680, 8690, 8692-8693, 8700 8000-8671, 8681-8683, 8691, 8720-8790, 9700-9701 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Adrenal Gland  Endocrine Other  Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C760</td>
<td>Head, face or neck, NOS, other and ill-defined sites <em>(Schema Discriminator 1-Occult Head and Neck Lymph Nodes: 0,1)</em></td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Ill-Defined Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C760</td>
<td>Head, face or neck, NOS, other and ill-defined sites <em>(Schema Discriminator 1-Occult Head and Neck Lymph Nodes: 0, 1)</em></td>
<td>8941</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C760</td>
<td>Head, face or neck, NOS, other and ill-defined sites <em>(Schema Discriminator 1-Occult Head and Neck Lymph Nodes: 2,3,4,5)</em></td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 8941, 9700-9701</td>
<td>Cervical Lymph Nodes and Unknown Primary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C760</td>
<td>Head, face or neck, NOS, other and ill-defined sites</td>
<td>8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940, 8950-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C761-C765, C767-C768</td>
<td>Other and Ill-Defined sites (excluding head, face, or neck, NOS)</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Ill-Defined Other  Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C770-C775, C778-C779</td>
<td>Lymph nodes</td>
<td>8000-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Ill-Defined Other  Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C809</td>
<td>Unknown primary site</td>
<td>8000-8180, 8191-8246, 8248-8700, 8720-8790, 9700-9701 8190, 8247 8710-8714, 8800-8934, 8940-9137, 9141-9582</td>
<td>Ill-Defined Other  Merkel Cell Skin  Soft Tissue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix III: Summary Stage 2018 (SS2018) Chapters Based on Histology and/or Primary Site-Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Neoplasms (9590-9992)

This appendix covers the Summary Stage chapters related to Hematopoietic and Lymphoid Neoplasms.

- **Exception 1:** Mycosis Fungoides (9700) and Sezary Syndrome (9701) for all primary sites are included in Appendix II with Solid Tumors

- **Exception 2:** For histologies 9680, 9699, 9700-9714, 9751-9755, see the appropriate Summary Stage chapters for the following primary sites:
  - C700, C710-C719: Brain
  - C701, C709, C720-C729: CNS Other
  - C751, C752, C753: Intracranial Gland

- **Exception 3:** The following primary sites with behavior of /0 (benign) or /1 (borderline) are collected in the following schemas:
  - C700, C710-C719: Brain
  - C701, C709, C720-C729: CNS Other
  - C751, C752, C753: Intracranial Gland

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary Stage Chapter</th>
<th>Histology(ies)</th>
<th>Primary Sites</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lymphoma Ocular Adnexa</td>
<td>9590-9699, 9702-9719, 9725-9726, 9734-9738, 9823, 9826-9827, 9930</td>
<td>C441, C690, C695-C696</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Cutaneous Lymphomas</td>
<td>9597, 9680, 9708-9709, 9712, 9718-9719, 9726</td>
<td>C440, C442-C449, C510, C609, C632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphoma</td>
<td>9591 (Schema Discriminator 1-Histology Discriminator: 3, 9)</td>
<td>C000-C440, C442-C689, C691-C694, C698-C809</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9590, 9596, 9650-9663, 9673-9679, 9687-9699, 9702-9705, 9714-9717, 9725, 9735, 9737-9738</td>
<td>C440, C442-C449, C510, C609, C632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9590, 9596-9663, 9673-9679, 9687-9698, 9716-9719, 9725-9726, 9735, 9737-9738</td>
<td>C700-C729, C750-C759</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9680, 9699, 9702-9714</td>
<td>C750, C754-C759</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9823</td>
<td>C000-C440, C442-C689, C691-C694, C698-C809</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9826-9827</td>
<td>C000-C440, C442-C689, C691-C694, C698-C809</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary Stage Chapter</td>
<td>Histology(ies)</td>
<td>Primary Sites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Myeloma and Plasma Cell Disorders | 9671, 9734  
9731, 9732, 9761                                                                           | C000-C440, C442-C689, C691-C694, C698-C809  
C000-C809                                                                 |
| HemeRetic                      | 9591  
(Schema Discriminator 1-Histology Discriminator: 1, 2)  
9724, 9727, 9740-9742, 9762-9809, 9811-9820, 9831-9920, 9931-9992  
9751, 9755-9759  
9930                                                                         | C000-C440, C442-C689, C691-C694, C698-C809  
C000-C809  
C000-C699, C739-C750, C754-C809  
C000-C440, C442-C689, C691-C694, C698-C809 |